Please read this manual before operating your device and keep it for future reference.
Intellectual Property

All Intellectual Property, as defined below, owned by or which is otherwise the property of Samsung or its respective suppliers relating to the SAMSUNG Galaxy Tab, including but not limited to, accessories, parts, or software relating there to (the “Galaxy Tab System”), is proprietary to Samsung and protected under federal laws, state laws, and international treaty provisions. Intellectual Property includes, but is not limited to, inventions (patentable or unpatentable), patents, trade secrets, copyrights, software, computer programs, and related documentation and other works of authorship. You may not infringe or otherwise violate the rights secured by the Intellectual Property. Moreover, you agree that you will not (and will not attempt to) modify, prepare derivative works of, reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, or otherwise attempt to create source code from the software. No title to or ownership in the Intellectual Property is transferred to you. All applicable rights of the Intellectual Property shall remain with SAMSUNG and its suppliers.

Open Source Software

Some software components of this product incorporate source code covered under GNU General Public License (GPL), GNU Lesser General Public License (LGPL), OpenSSL License, BSD License and other open source licenses. To obtain the source code covered under the open source licenses, please visit:

http://opensource.samsung.com

Disclaimer of Warranties; Exclusion of Liability

EXCEPT AS SET FORTH IN THE EXPRESS WARRANTY CONTAINED ON THE WARRANTY PAGE ENCLOSED WITH THE PRODUCT, THE PURCHASER TAKES THE PRODUCT "AS IS", AND SAMSUNG MAKES NO EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTY OF ANY KIND WHATSOEVER WITH RESPECT TO THE PRODUCT, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE MERCHANTABILITY OF THE PRODUCT OR ITS FITNESS FOR ANY PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR USE; THE DESIGN, CONDITION OR QUALITY OF THE PRODUCT; THE PERFORMANCE OF THE PRODUCT; THE WORKMANSHP OF THE PRODUCT OR THE COMPONENTS CONTAINED THEREIN; OR COMPLIANCE OF THE PRODUCT WITH THE REQUIREMENTS OF ANY LAW, RULE, SPECIFICATION OR CONTRACT PERTAINING
THEREFORE. NOTHING CONTAINED IN THE INSTRUCTION MANUAL SHALL BE CONSTRUED TO CREATE AN EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTY OF ANY KIND WHATSOEVER WITH RESPECT TO THE PRODUCT. IN ADDITION, SAMSUNG SHALL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY DAMAGES OF ANY KIND RESULTING FROM THE PURCHASE OR USE OF THE PRODUCT OR ARISING FROM THE BREACH OF THE EXPRESS WARRANTY, INCLUDING INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, OR LOSS OF ANTICIPATED PROFITS OR BENEFITS.

SAMSUNG IS NOT LIABLE FOR PERFORMANCE ISSUES OR INCOMPATIBILITIES CAUSED BY YOUR EDITING OF REGISTRY SETTINGS, OR YOUR MODIFICATION OF OPERATING SYSTEM SOFTWARE.

USING CUSTOM OPERATING SYSTEM SOFTWARE MAY CAUSE YOUR DEVICE AND APPLICATIONS TO WORK IMPROPERLY.

Samsung Telecommunications America (STA), LLC

Headquarters:
1301 E. Lookout Drive
Richardson, TX 75082

Customer Care Center:
1000 Klein Rd.
Plano, TX 75074
Toll Free Tel: 1.888.987.HELP (4357)

Internet Address:
http://www.samsung.com
Do you have questions about your Samsung Mobile Device? For 24 hour information and assistance, we offer a new FAQ/ARS System (Automated Response System) at: www.samsung.com/us/support

Nuance®, VSuite™, T9® Text Input, XT9® Smart Input, and the Nuance logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Nuance Communications, Inc., or its affiliates in the United States and/or other countries.

The Bluetooth® word mark, figure mark (stylized “B Design”), and combination mark (Bluetooth word mark and “B Design”) are registered trademarks and are wholly owned by the Bluetooth SIG.

Google, the Google logo, Android, the Android logo, Google Play, Gmail, Google Mail, Google Maps, Google Music, Google Talk, Picasa, YouTube and other marks are trademarks of Google Inc.

Wi-Fi is a registered trademark of the Wireless Fidelity Alliance, Inc.

Swype and the Swype logos are trademarks of Swype, Inc. © 2010 Swype, Inc. All rights reserved.

DivX®, DivX Certified® and associated logos are trademarks of Rovi Corporation or its subsidiaries and are used under license.

DivX Certified® to play DivX® video up to HD 720p, including premium content.

ABOUT DIVX VIDEO: DivX® is a digital video format created by DivX, LLC, a subsidiary of Rovi Corporation. This is an official DivX Certified® device that plays DivX video. Visit www.divx.com for more information and software tools to convert your files into DivX videos.

ABOUT DIVX VIDEO-ON-DEMAND: This DivX Certified® device must be registered in order to play purchased DivX Video-on-Demand (VOD) movies. To obtain your registration code, locate the DivX VOD section in your device setup menu (tap Apps > Settings > About device > Legal information > License settings > DivX® VOD > Register). Go to vod.divx.com for more information on how to complete your registration.
# Table of Contents

## Section 1: Getting Started ......................... 6
- Understanding This User Manual ................. 6
- SIM Card ..................................... 7
- Battery .................................... 9
- Turning Your Device On and Off .................. 11
- Setting Up Your Device .......................... 11
- Retrieving Your Google Account Password ...... 14
- Using Google Maps ............................. 14
- Creating a Samsung Account ..................... 14
- Task Manager .................................. 15
- Galaxy Tab Accessories ........................ 17
- Securing Your Device ........................... 17
- Troubleshooting ................................ 18

## Section 2: Understanding Your Device .... 19
- Features ..................................... 19
- Front View ................................... 20
- Top and Bottom Views .......................... 21
- Back View .................................... 22
- Home Screen .................................. 22
- Navigating Your Device .......................... 26
- Notifications .................................. 29
- Status Details ................................ 29
- Quick Settings ................................ 30
- Status Bar .................................... 32
- Primary Shortcuts ............................... 34
- Widgets ....................................... 34
- App Shortcuts ................................ 38
- Wallpapers .................................... 39
- Mini App Tray .................................. 40
- Apps Screen ................................... 41
- Applications ................................... 42

## Section 3: Entering Text ....................... 50
- Text Input Methods ............................. 50
- Changing the Input Method ....................... 50
- Samsung Keyboard ............................. 51
- Entering Text Using Swype ....................... 56
- Using Speech Recognition ....................... 59
Section 4: Contacts and Accounts .............60
  Accounts ...........................................60
  Contacts .............................................61
  Groups ................................................67
  Favorites ............................................69
Section 5: Messaging ...............................70
  Types of Messages .................................70
  Creating and Sending Messages ...........70
  Message Options ..................................71
  Viewing Newly Received Messages ........73
  Deleting Messages .................................75
  Messaging Search .................................75
  Messaging Settings ...............................76
  Text Templates ....................................77
  Gmail .................................................78
  Email ................................................82
  Google Talk ........................................91
  Messenger ..........................................95
Section 6: Multimedia ..............................96
  Camera ...............................................96
  Camcorder ..........................................102
  Video Player .......................................106
  Gallery ..............................................110
  Photo Editor .......................................114
  Media Hub ..........................................116
  T-Mobile TV ........................................118
  Play Movies ........................................119
  Play Music ..........................................119
  Music Player .......................................128
Section 7: Web .......................................135
  Google+ .............................................135
  Internet .............................................135
Section 8: Connections .............................144
  Wi-Fi .................................................144
  Wi-Fi Direct .......................................146
  Bluetooth ..........................................148
  Tethering ..........................................151
  Portable Wi-Fi Hotspot .......................151
  Kies Via Wi-Fi ....................................153
  Synchronizing with Windows Media Player .154
  Connecting as a Mass Storage Device ....154
  GPS Applications ..................................155
## Section 9: Applications and Widgets  .... 156

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Application</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Update Available</td>
<td>156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Access T-Mobile</td>
<td>156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alarm</td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AllShare</td>
<td>158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amazon</td>
<td>159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Asphalt 6</td>
<td>159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Blio eBooks T-Mobile</td>
<td>159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calculator</td>
<td>160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Calendar</td>
<td>160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Camera</td>
<td>164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contacts</td>
<td>164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Downloads</td>
<td>164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dropbox</td>
<td>165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Email</td>
<td>167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Files</td>
<td>167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gallery</td>
<td>168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Get Web Now</td>
<td>168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gmail</td>
<td>168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Google+</td>
<td>169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Internet</td>
<td>169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Latitude</td>
<td>169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local</td>
<td>171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lookup Security</td>
<td>172</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maps</td>
<td>173</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Media Hub</td>
<td>176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Memo</td>
<td>177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Messaging</td>
<td>178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Messenger</td>
<td>178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MobileLife Organizer</td>
<td>179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Music Player</td>
<td>180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Navigation</td>
<td>180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pen Memo</td>
<td>182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Photo Editor</td>
<td>184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Play Books</td>
<td>184</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Play Movies</td>
<td>186</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Play Music</td>
<td>187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Play Store</td>
<td>187</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Managing Downloads</td>
<td>188</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pro Apps</td>
<td>190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pulse</td>
<td>190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quickoffice HD</td>
<td>190</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Search</td>
<td>192</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Settings</td>
<td>192</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Section 10: Settings ..............................................201
  Accessing Settings ......................................201
  Wireless and Network ....................................201
  Sound Settings .............................................211
  Display Settings ..........................................213
  Power Saving Mode .......................................215
  Storage .......................................................216
  Battery .........................................................216
  Applications ...............................................217
  Accounts and Synchronization .............................220

Section 11: Health and Safety Information ........................242
  Exposure to Radio Frequency (RF) Signals ................242
  Specific Absorption Rate (SAR) Certification Information ..................................................247
  FCC Part 15 Information to User ............................249
  Smart Practices While Driving ..............................249
  Battery Use and Safety .....................................250
  Samsung Mobile Products and Recycling ..................252
  UL Certified Travel Charger ................................252
  Display / Touch-Screen ......................................252
  GPS ....................................................................253
  Care and Maintenance .......................................254
Section 12: Warranty Information .......... 261
  Standard Limited Warranty ............... 261
  End User License Agreement for Software . 266
  Social Hub .................................. 271
LIMITATION OF LIABILITY .................. 276
  Social Hub Privacy Policy ............... 279
INFORMATION THAT WE COLLECT .......... 279
USE OF INFORMATION WE COLLECT .......... 280
DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION TO
  THIRD PARTIES ............................ 281
  CHILDREN .................................. 282
SECURITY OF THE INFORMATION
  WE COLLECT ................................ 282
  CHAT ROOMS AND OTHER PUBLIC AREAS .. 282
  CONTESTS AND SWEEPSTAKES ............ 283

ACCURACY OF THE INFORMATION
  WE COLLECT ............................... 283
CHANGES TO PRIVACY POLICY ............. 284
Social Hub End User License Agreement ... 284
Index .........................................................289
Section 1: Getting Started

This section helps you to quickly start using your device.

Understanding This User Manual

The sections of this manual generally follow the features of your device. A robust index for features begins on page 289. Also included is important safety information, beginning on page 242, that you should know before using your device.

This manual gives navigation instructions according to the default display settings. If you select other settings, navigation steps may be different. Unless otherwise specified, all instructions in this manual assume that you are starting from a Home screen. To get to a Home screen, you may need to unlock the device. For more information, refer to “Securing Your Device” on page 17.

Note: Instructions in this manual are based on default settings and may vary from your device depending on the software version on your device and any changes to the device’s settings.

Note: Unless stated otherwise, instructions in this user manual start with the device unlocked, at the Home screen.

All screen images in this manual are simulated. Actual displays may vary depending on the software version of your device and any changes to the device’s settings.

Special Text

In this manual, some text is set apart from the rest. This special text is intended to point out important information, share quick methods for activating features, define terms, and more. The definitions for these methods are as follows:

- **Notes**: Presents alternative options for the current feature, menu, or sub-menu.
- **Tips**: Provides quick or innovative methods or useful shortcuts.
- **Important**: Points out important information about the current feature that could affect performance.
- **Warning**: Brings important information to your attention that can help to prevent loss of data or functionality or damage to your device.
Text Conventions
This manual provides condensed information about how to use your device. To make this possible, the following text conventions are used to represent often-used steps:

→ Arrows are used to represent the sequence of selecting successive options in longer, or repetitive, procedures. For example:
   From a Home screen, tap ➔ Apps ➔ Settings.

SIM Card
Your device uses a SIM (Subscriber Identity Module). The SIM is a rectangular plastic card that stores your device number, information about your wireless service, and other information such as messages and contacts.

Caution! Do not bend or scratch the SIM card. Take care when handling, installing, or removing the SIM card, and avoid exposing the SIM card to static electricity, water, or dirt. Keep the SIM card out of reach of small children.

Installing the SIM Card
The SIM card must remain in the device when in use.

Important! Turn the device off before installing or removing the SIM card. To turn the device off, press and hold the Power/Lock Key.

1. Open the SIM card slot and carefully insert the SIM Card into the slot, with the logo facing up.
2. Push the SIM card in gently until it clicks into place.

Warning! Do not insert a microSD or other memory card into the SIM card slot.
Removing the SIM Card

**Important!** Turn the device off before installing or removing the SIM card. To turn the device off, press and hold the Power/Lock Key.

1. Open the SIM card slot and gently push the SIM Card inward to release it.
2. Carefully slide the SIM Card out of the slot.
3. Place the cover back over the open slot.
Battery

Your device is powered by a rechargeable, standard Li-Ion battery. A Wall/USB Charger (Charging Head and USB cable) are included with the device for charging the battery.

**Note:** The battery comes partially charged. You must fully charge the battery before using your device for the first time.

After the first charge, you can use the device while charging.

**Warning!** Use only approved charging devices. Approved accessories are designed to maximize battery life. Using other accessories may invalidate your warranty and may cause damage.

Battery Indicator

The Battery icon 📈 in the Status Bar shows the battery power level. When battery power is 15% or less, your device prompts you to charge the battery. If you continue to operate the device without charging, the device powers off. For battery use information, see “About Device” on page 240.

**Tip:** Tap the Time field to display battery charge status.

Charging the Battery

Your device comes with a Wall/USB Charger (Outlet Connector, Charging Head, and USB cable) to charge your device from any standard AC power outlet.

**Note:** The battery comes partially charged. You must fully charge the battery before using your device for the first time.

After the first charge, you can use the device while charging.
1. Carefully slide the Outlet Connector into the Charging Head (1). Verify the connection is secure.

2. Insert the USB cable into the Charging Head (2).

3. Insert the USB cable into the device’s Charger/Accessory Port (3).

4. Plug the Charging Head into a standard AC power outlet.

**Warning!** While the device is charging, if the touch screen does not function due to an unstable power supply, unplug the USB power adapter from the power outlet or unplug the USB cable from the device.
5. When charging is complete, unplug the Charging Head from the power outlet and remove the USB cable from the device.

**Turning Your Device On and Off**

**Turning Your Device On**

- Press and hold the **Power/Lock Key**.

For more information, refer to “Unlocking the Device” on page 17.

**Note:** Your device’s internal antenna is located along the top back of the device. Do not block the antenna; doing so may affect signal quality and may cause the device to operate at a higher power level than is necessary. For more information, refer to “Location Services” on page 221.

**Turning Your Device Off**

1. Press and hold the **Power/Lock Key**.
2. At the prompt, tap **Power off**.

**Setting Up Your Device**

When you first turn on your device, you are asked to set up a few things. To do that, the following screens display. Some screens can be skipped (tap **Skip**) or re-displayed (tap **Back**). Some screens display depending on the options you choose.

**Welcome**

1. Tap the language field, scroll through the list, and tap the language you want your device to use, such as, English (United States).
2. Tap **Start**.
Wi-Fi

If prompted, make sure the Wi-Fi **OFF / ON** icon is set to ON and choose one of the following options:

**Note:** If your SIM card is not installed or detecting the network, you will be prompted to establish an active Wi-Fi connection.

- Tap **Add network** to enter a Network SSID that is not listed.
- Tap **Scan** to make sure you have an accurate list of Wi-Fi networks.
- Tap one of the Wi-Fi networks in the list, enter the password, and tap **Connect**. Tap and connect to another Wi-Fi network or tap **Next** to continue.
- Tap **Skip** to perform this task later. For more information, refer to “Wi-Fi” on page 201.

Set Date and Time

1. Tap the time zone field (**GMT+00:00**) and select the correct time zone.
2. Under **Date**, set the date (month, day, year), if necessary.
3. Under **Time**, set the time (hour, minute, and AM or PM), if necessary.
4. Tap **Next**.

Make it Google

Your new device uses your Google account to fully use its Android features, including Gmail, Maps, Navigation, Google Talk, and Google Play™.

The Make it Google screen allows you to create a new Google account or sign in, if you already have a Google account.

**Note:** If you skipped Wi-Fi setup, the Wi-Fi setup screen displays and you must connect through a Wi-Fi network.
Tap **Sign in** and then enter the email address and password of your existing account.

– or –

Tap **Get an account** or enter the email address and password of your existing account.

– or –

Tap **Not now** to perform this task later. For more information, refer to “Setting Up Your Gmail Account” on page 78.

**Enable Purchases**

This screen displays if you signed in to your Google account.

- Enter purchase information for your Google Play account and tap **Save**.

– or –

Tap **Skip**.

**Backup and Restore**

This screen also displays if you signed in to your Google account.

1. Read the backup and restore information.
2. Enable either or both options.
3. Tap **Next**.

The Restoring screen displays while your information is being restored.

**Use Google Location**

1. Read the information on the screen and enable either or both of the Google location services.
2. Tap **Next** to continue.

**This Tablet Belongs To ...**

To personalize the tablet with your name:

1. Tap the First and Last fields and use the on-screen keyboard to enter your first and last name.
2. Tap **Next**.

**Google Services**

This screen displays if you did not signed in to your Google account. The use of this device is subject to the privacy policy and other terms.

1. Tap **Learn more** to read the privacy policy and other terms.
2. Tap **Next**, if you agree that your device may receive and install updates from Google.
Setup Complete

Congratulations! Your device is set up and ready to use.
- Tap Finish. The main Home screen displays.

Retrieving Your Google Account Password

A Google account password is required for Google applications. If you misplace or forget your Google Account password, follow these instructions to retrieve it:

1. From your computer, use an Internet browser to navigate to http://google.com/accounts.
2. Once the URL loads, click on the Can’t access your account? link and follow the on-screen instructions.

Using Google Maps

In order to use some applications related to Google Maps, you must first connect Wi-Fi. For more information, refer to “Wi-Fi” on page 201.

You must also enable location services to use Google Maps. Some features require Standalone or Google location services. For more information, refer to “Location Services” on page 221.

Creating a Samsung Account

Just as important as setting up and activating a Google account to help provide access to Maps, Latitude, Play Store, etc.. An active Samsung account is required to begin accessing applications such as Media Hub.

Note: The Samsung account application will manage your access to the previously mentioned applications, and there is no longer a need to remember different passwords for each application.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings ➔ Accounts and sync.
2. Tap the OFF / ON icon to turn the Auto-sync on or off.
3. Tap Add account ➔ Samsung account.
4. If you have previously created a Samsung account, tap Sign in.
   – or –
   If this is your first time, tap Create new account.
5. Tap Terms and conditions and Privacy policy to read the legal disclaimers and related information.
6. If you agree to the terms, place a green check mark in the **I accept all the terms above** field and tap **Agree**.
7. Enter your the required information and tap **Sign up**.

**Note:** You may be prompted to confirm your credentials via email.

8. Verify your account via email by accessing the email address provided during setup and following the steps outlined to complete your registration.
   – or –
   If you have already setup your email account on the device, tap **Go to Mailbox** and follow the on-screen instructions.
   – or –
   If you have already verified your email address, tap **Activate account**.

**Note:** Without confirming your email address and following the documented procedures, related applications will not function properly since it is Samsung account that is managing their username and password access.

**Task Manager**

Your device can run applications simultaneously and some applications run in the background.

Use Task Manager to see which applications are running on your device and to end running applications to extend battery life. You can also uninstall applications from your device and see how much memory is used by applications.

**Task Manager Pop-Up**

The Task manager pop-up provides information about **Active applications** and includes a **RAM manager**. It also has a link to the Task Manager application.

**To access the Task manager pop-up:**

1. From a Home screen, tap **Mini App Tray** ➔ **(Task manager)**.
2. Tap the **Active applications** tab to view applications running on your device.
3. Tap the **RAM manager** tab to display the amount of Random Access Memory (RAM) currently in use. Tap **Clear memory** to clear inactive and background processes.
4. Tap in the top right corner of the Task manager pop-up to close the application.

5. Tap in the top left corner to display the entire Task Manager application.

**Shutting Down a Currently Active Application**

1. From a Home screen, tap (Mini App Tray) ➔ (Task manager).

2. From the Active applications tab, tap to end an application or End all to stop all running applications.

**Task Manager Application**

The Task Manager application provides information about applications, including Active applications, Downloaded, RAM manager, Storage, and Help.

To access the Task Manager:

1. From a Home screen, tap (Apps) ➔ (Task manager).

   – or –

   From any screen, touch and hold (Home) and then tap in the top left corner.

   – or –

   Tap (Navigation) ➔ Task manager.

2. Tap Active applications to view applications running on your device. Tap End to end an application or End all to end all running applications.

3. Tap Downloaded to view applications installed from Google Play. Tap Uninstall to remove an application from your device.

4. Tap RAM manager to display the amount of Random Access Memory (RAM) currently in use. Tap Clear memory to clear inactive and background processes.

5. Tap Storage to view internal (Device memory) storage memory statistics.

6. Tap Help to display on-screen information about various help topics such as extending battery life and understanding the RAM manager.
Galaxy Tab Accessories

To find accessories for your Galaxy Tab:

2. Use your model number to find compatible accessories.

Securing Your Device

By default, the device locks automatically when the screen times out or you can lock it manually. You can unlock the device using one of the default Unlock screens or, for increased security, use a personal screen unlock pattern.

For more information about creating and enabling a Screen unlock pattern, see “Screen Lock” on page 222.

For other settings related to securing your device, see “Location Services” on page 221.

Note: Unless stated otherwise, instructions in this User Manual start with the device unlocked, at the Home screen.

Locking the device manually

- Press the Power/Lock Key.

Unlocking the Device

1. Press the Power/Lock Key. The Lock screen displays.
2. Swipe across the screen as shown.

The last screen you accessed is displayed.

Note: You can customize the Lock screen and set the type of Screen Unlock you want to use (Swipe, Pattern, PIN, or Password). For more information, refer to “Security” on page 222.

Troubleshooting

If your device has fatal errors, hangs up, or freezes, you may need to reset the device to regain functionality.

- If your device is frozen and unresponsive, press and hold the Power/Lock Key \( \text{for at least 20 seconds} \).
Section 2: Understanding Your Device

This section outlines key features of your device and describes the screen and the icons that appear when the device is in use. It also shows how to navigate through the device.

Features

- 10.1-inch WXGA TFT (PLS) LCD touch screen
- Android™ Version 4.0.4, Ice Cream Sandwich
- Full HTML Web Browser compatible with Adobe® Flash® Technology
- Bluetooth® 2.1 Wireless technology. For more information, refer to “Bluetooth” on page 203.
- Built-in Wi-Fi technology (802.11 a/b/g/n)
- High Speed packet Access Plus (HSPA+) delivering data speeds faster than the current 3G network technology
- 3 Megapixel Camera/Camcorder with flash
- 2 Megapixel forward-facing Camera for Video Chat
- Full integration of Google applications (Gmail, YouTube, and Google Maps)

- Messaging Features:
  - Gmail
  - Email (corporate and personal)
  - Google Talk™ (Instant Messaging and Video Chat)
- Photo Gallery that supports JPEG, PNG, GIF, WBMP, BMP, and AGIF formats
- HD Video Player (1080p)
  - Container types: MP4, 3GP, AVI (DivX), WMV (ASF), and FLV
  - Codecs: 3GPP, H.263, H.264, WMV, Streaming, and MPEG4 formats
- DivX Certified to play DivX video up to HD 720p, including premium content
- Music Player supports MP3, ACC, ACC+, eACC+, WMA, MPEG4, WAV, and MIDI formats
- Ringtone supports MP3, HiFi (mp3, aac), Megatones (MIDI), AAC, AAC+, eAAC+, MIDI, WMA, MPEG4 formats
- 1GB RAM memory and 16GB on-board memory, which is used for data storage and access
- Preloaded applications such as Google Play™ Store, Google Play™ Books, QuickOffice®, AllShare, Social Hub, Movie Studio, Zinio™, and Samsung Media Hub. For more information, refer to “Applications” on page 42.

**Warning!** This device does not support some USB storage media devices. For more information, refer to “Galaxy Tab Accessories” on page 17.

**Front View**

The following items can be found on the front and sides of your device as illustrated.

1. **External Speakers**: Used in music or video playback, notification tones, and for other sounds.
2. **Light Sensor**: Used to control screen brightness automatically and when taking photos with the Front-facing Camera.
3. **Front-facing Camera Lens**: Used when taking photos.
4. **Display Screen**: The orientation of the display screen rotates with the tablet as you turn it. You can turn this feature on and off. For more information, refer to “Quick Settings” on page 30.
Top and Bottom Views

The following items can be found on the top and bottom of your device.

1. **Power/Lock Key**: Press and hold to turn the device on or off. Press to lock the device or to wake the screen for unlocking. Press and hold to reveal the **Device options** list.

2. **Volume Key**: From a Home screen, press to adjust Master Volume. During music playback, press to adjust volume.

3. **Charger/Accessory Port**: Plug in a USB cable for charging or to sync music and files.

4. **Microphone**: Used to pick up your voice or audio during recording.

5. **3.5mm Headset Jack**: Plug in for headphones.

6. **SIM Card slot**: Insertion slot for SIM card.
Back View
The following items can be found on the back of your device.

1. **Camera Lens**: Used when taking photos or recording videos.
2. **Camera Flash**: Used when taking photos.

---

Home Screen
The Home screen is the starting point for using your device.

**Note:** Unless stated otherwise, instructions in this user manual start with the device unlocked, at the Home screen.

1. **Google Search**: Search your tablet and the web by typing or speaking. For more information, refer to “Search” on page 192.
2. **Home screen**: The starting point for using your device. Place shortcuts, widgets and other items to customize your device to your needs.
3. **App Shortcuts**: Shortcuts to common applications. For more information, refer to “App Shortcuts” on page 38.
4. **Current screen**: Indicates which Home screen is being displayed. For more information, refer to “Extended Home Screen” on page 24.
5. **Widgets**: Applications that run on the Home screen. Some widgets are found on the Home screen by default. For more information, refer to “Widgets” on page 34.
Tip: The area across the top of the screen is called the Application Bar.

6. **Apps**: Display the Apps screen.

7. **Back**: Return to the previous screen or option.

8. **Home**: Display the central Home screen. Touch and hold to display the Task Manager pop-up.

9. **Navigation**: Open a list of thumbnail images of apps you have worked with recently. Tap an Application to open it. Touch and hold to display the Apps screen. Select the Task manager to display the Task Manager.

10. **Quick Launch**: This softkey can be set to launch several different applications. The default function is Screen capture. For more information, refer to “Quick Launch” on page 214.

11. **Primary Shortcuts**: Shortcuts to common features. These shortcuts are found on the Home screen by default. For more information, refer to “Primary Shortcuts” on page 34.

12. **Mini App Tray**: Shortcuts to apps that you can use anytime, such as your calendar, a memo pad, and a calculator. For more information, refer to “Mini App Tray” on page 40.
13. **System Bar**: The area along the bottom of the Home screen where you can find navigation buttons and icons that show notifications, battery power, and connection details.

14. **Notification Icons**: Presents icons to show notifications from the system or from an application. Tap a Notification Icon to display more detail. For a list of icons, see “Status Bar” on page 32.

15. **Time**: The current time. For more information, refer to “Date and Time” on page 236.

16. **Status Icons**: Indicate the status of your tablet. Tap the Time / Status Icons area to display the Status Details panel. For more information, refer to “Status Bar” on page 32.

---

**Extended Home Screen**

The Home screen consists of the Home panel, plus four panels that extend beyond the display width to provide more space for adding shortcuts and widgets.

Slide your finger horizontally across the screen to scroll to the left or right side panels. As you scroll, the indicator at the top of the display shows your current position.

**Note**: The center panel (Home screen) displays when you tap Home.

**Customizing the Home Screens**

To customize the Home screens to suit your preferences:

1. Navigate to one of the Home screen panels.
2. Touch and hold on the screen until the Home screen pop-up displays.
3. Tap Add to Home screen, and then select:
   - **Apps and widgets** to add app or widget shortcuts on the Home screen
   - **Folder** to add a folder on a Home screen
• Page to add or remove a Home screen. For more information, refer to “Adding and Removing Home Screen Panels” on page 25.

– or –

Set a new wallpaper. For more information, refer to “Wallpapers” on page 39.

Display Settings
You can customize display screen settings to your preferences. For more information, refer to “Display Settings” on page 213.

Adding and Removing Home Screen Panels
Your device comes with seven Home screen panels. You can customize the Home screen by removing or adding panels.

Note: The panel in the center position displays when you tap Home.

1. From a Home screen, pinch the screen from the left and right side to the center to display the editing screen.

– or –

Touch and hold on the screen until the Home screen pop-up displays. Tap Add to Home screen ➔ Page.

2. Use these controls to configure panels:

   Remove: Touch and drag a panel to the Trash Can to remove the panel from the Home screen.

   Add: Tap to add a new panel, up to a total of seven. This option is available when less than seven panels have been added.
Default Home Page: Tap the Home icon at the upper right corner of a panel to set it as the default home screen.

3. To rearrange the order of panels, touch and drag a panel to a new location.

4. Tap Back to return to the Home screen.

Assigning a New Default Home page

1. From a Home screen, pinch the screen from the left and right side to the center to display the editing screen.

2. Tap Home page adjacent to an available screen. You are then notified there is a new Default Home page.

Navigating Your Device

Use command buttons and the touch screen to navigate.

Command Buttons

Back

- Tap Back to return to the previous screen, option, or step.

Note: When the on-screen keyboard is active, Close Keyboard displays.

Home

- Tap Home to display the first center Home screen.

Navigation

- Tap Navigation to open a list of thumbnail images of apps you have worked with recently.
  - Tap an application to open it. Tap the Task manager to display the Task Manager.
Screen Capture

- Tap **Screen Capture** to capture an image of the current screen and edit the image, then tap **Save** to save the image. Touch and hold to capture and add an image of the current screen to the clipboard.

**Note:** A copy of the screenshot is automatically saved to the clipboard.

To view the screen shots:
1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps ➔ Files**.
2. Tap **Root ➔ Pictures ➔ Screenshots**.
3. Select a screen capture file to display it.

**Note:** This **Quick Launch** key can be modified to launch other applications. For more information, refer to “Quick Launch” on page 214.

---

Other Buttons

Google Search

- Tap **Google** to search the Web.

Context-Sensitive Menus

Context-sensitive menus offer options for features or screens.

To access context-sensitive menus:
1. Tap **Menu** to display a list of options.
2. Select an option in the list.

Compatibility Zoom

When an application was designed for a smaller screen, a zoom control appears next to the on-screen clock. An example of such an application would be Slacker.

1. Tap **OK** to adjust the view of the application to fit the screen.
2. Tap the Zoom Control to adjust the view.

Application Bar

The Application Bar is the area along the top of various application screens. It usually contains the Search and Menu icons, as well as other icons that are used to display options and settings.

Screen Navigation

Tap
Tap items to select or launch them. For example:
- Tap the on-screen keyboard to enter characters or text.
- Tap a menu item to select it.
- Tap an application's icon to launch the application.

Touch and Hold
Activate on-screen items. For example:
- Touch and hold a widget on the home screen to move it.
- Touch and hold on a field to display a pop-up menu of options.

Swipe, Flick, or Slide
Swipe, flick, or slide your finger vertically or horizontally across the screen. For example:
- Unlocking the screen.
- Scrolling the Home screens or a menu.
Pinch

Use two fingers, such as your index finger and thumb, to make an inward pinch motion on the screen, as if you are picking something up, or an outward motion by sweeping your fingers out.

For example:
- Pinch a photo in Gallery to zoom in.
- Pinch a webpage to zoom in or out.

Notifications

When you receive a notification, the Notification icon displays in the System Bar, to the left of the Time. Notifications indicate the arrival of Gmail, Email, alarms, and more.

Tap a Notification icon for more detail. For example, tap a Gmail Notification icon to see who sent the message.

Tap the Time field to open the Notifications list to view all of your current notifications. Tap a Notification in the list to display the item. For example, tap a Gmail entry to open the Gmail application and view the message.

Most apps that send notifications, such as Gmail and Google Talk, have individual settings that can be configured. See the settings for individual applications in the applicable section of this user manual.

Status Details

This area of the Status Bar displays the current date and time, battery status, and Wi-Fi connectivity status information.

To open the Status Details:

1. Tap the Time area of the Status Bar. If you have any current notifications, their summaries are listed below the Status Details. Tap a notification summary to respond to it.

2. Close the Status Details by tapping any other part of the screen.
Quick Settings

This area allows you to view and control the most common settings for your tablet, and access the complete Settings application.

Tap the Time area of the System bar to display the Quick Settings pop-up.

Note: It is necessary to scroll across the Quick Setting icons to view all options (ex: Bluetooth).

The Quick Settings are:

- **Wi-Fi**: Tap to enable or disable Wi-Fi. For more information, refer to “Wi-Fi” on page 201.
- **GPS**: Tap to enable or disable the device’s GPS functions. For more information, refer to “Use GPS Satellites” on page 221.
- **Sound / Vibrate / Mute**: Tap to enable or disable sound mode.
- **Screen rotation**: When On the screen rotates automatically from landscape to portrait and vice versa. When Off the screen is fixed in landscape mode. For more information, refer to “Auto-Rotate Screen” on page 214.
- **Power saving**: When enabled, your device automatically analyzes the screen and adjusts the brightness to conserve battery power. For more information, refer to “Power Saving Mode” on page 215.
- **Notifications**: Tap to enable or disable system and application notifications. For more information, refer to “Notifications” on page 29.
• **Bluetooth**: Tap to enable or disable Bluetooth functionality. For more information, refer to “Bluetooth” on page 148.

• **Driving mode**: New notifications are read aloud when enabled.

• **Sync**: Synchronizes your device with the network.
  Synchronizes contacts, email, time, and a variety of accounts.

• **Brightness**: Touch and drag the slider to set the brightness or tap **Auto** to allow the device to set brightness automatically based on available light and battery charge status. For more information, refer to “Brightness” on page 213.

• **Settings**: Tap to open the Settings application. For more information, refer to “Settings” on page 201.

3. **Tap Clear** to remove Notification Icons from the System Bar.

4. **Tap a notification entry** to display the details.

5. **Close the Quick Settings** by tapping **X** in the upper, right corner of the Quick Settings pop-up or by tapping outside the Quick Settings screen.

Quick Settings also displays icons under the Notifications heading to alert you to activity on the tablet such as new messages, application downloads, software updates, and more. The following table lists those icons.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Icon</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>✔️</td>
<td><strong>Download Successful</strong>: A recent application download or update completed successfully.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🎤</td>
<td><strong>Google Talk Invitation</strong>: Someone has invited you to chat using Google Talk.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🌍</td>
<td><strong>Navigation Active</strong>: The Navigation App is active. For more information, refer to “Navigation” on page 180.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>💌</td>
<td><strong>New Email Message</strong>: You have new email. Tap Reply to view and answer the email.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>💌</td>
<td><strong>New Gmail Message</strong>: You have new Gmail. Tap the icon for additional information.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🚀</td>
<td><strong>Samsung account</strong>: Set up your Samsung account. For more information, refer to “Creating a Samsung Account” on page 14.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>🔗</td>
<td><strong>Software update</strong>: There is a software update available for this device.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Updates Available: Updates to the applications you have downloaded are available.

Wi-Fi networks available: An open Wi-Fi network is in range.

**Status Bar**

The Status Bar is part of the System Bar and displays icons to show network status, battery power, and other details.

- **Battery Level**: Shown fully charged.
- **Charging Indicator**: Battery is charging.
- **Device Power Critical**: Battery has only three percent power remaining. At about 15 percent power remaining, a popup is displayed to remind you to charge immediately.
- **USB Connection Indicator**: The device is connected to a computer using a USB cable, but it is not charging. The battery is only charged while connected to a computer, if the device is turned off. When the device is off, press the Power/Lock key to see the battery charging indicator.
- **Battery Fully Charged**: When the battery is fully charged, this indicator is displayed.
- **USB Connected**: Device is connected to a computer using a USB cable. Displays in upper left corner of screen.
- **Download in progress**: An application is being downloaded to the device.
- **Airplane Mode**: Indicates that the Airplane Mode is active, which allows you to use many of your device’s features, but it cannot access online information or applications.
- **Set up input methods**: When the keyboard is being displayed, tap this icon to display a menu of quick keyboard settings.
**Bluetooth Active:** Bluetooth is turned on. For more information, refer to “Bluetooth” on page 148.

**Play Music App:** A song is playing in the Play Music app. Tap the Music icon or tap the Status Details to see the song title and music player controls. For more information, refer to “Play Music” on page 119.

**Music player:** A song is playing. Tap the Music icon or tap the Status Details to see the song title and music player controls. For more information, refer to “Playing Music” on page 131.

**3G Active:** Displays when connected to the 3G network.

**3G Communicating:** Displays when your device is communicating with the 3G network.

**4G Active:** Displays when connected to the HSPA+ network.

**4G Communicating:** Displays when your device is communicating with the HSPA+ network.

**Wi-Fi In Range:** Wi-Fi is active and there is an available open wireless network.

**Wi-Fi Active:** Wi-Fi is connected, active, and communicating with a Wireless Access Point (WAP).

**Wi-Fi Direct:** Displays when Wi-Fi Direct is active and your tablet is connected to another device. For more information, refer to “Wi-Fi Direct” on page 146.

**Mobile AP Hotspot:** Displays when the Mobile AP Hotspot feature is active and communicating. For more information, refer to “Portable Wi-Fi Hotspot” on page 151.

**USB Connected:** Device is connected to a computer using a USB cable. Displayed in upper left corner of screen.

**USB Tethering Mode:** Displays when the USB Tethering mode is active and communicating. For more information, refer to “Tethering” on page 151.

**GPS Active:** Displays when GPS is active.

**Alarm Set:** Displays when you set an alarm to ring at a specified time. For more information, refer to “Alarm” on page 157.
Primary Shortcuts
Primary Shortcuts appear at the bottom of the main Home screen.

Tip: The main Home screen is usually the center Home screen.

The default Primary Shortcuts are: Asphalt 6, YouTube, Slacker Radio, TegraZone Games, T-Mobile TV, Blio eBooks, Play Books, and Play Movies.

For more information, refer to “Applications” on page 42.

Event: This is a notification for one or more events. For more information, refer to “Creating an Event or Task” on page 162.

Screenshot Captured: A screenshot has been captured. For more information, refer to “Screen Capture” on page 27.

Power Saving Mode: Indicates that your device is automatically making adjustments to conserve battery power. For more information, refer to “Power Saving Mode” on page 215.

Application shortcuts can be added to any Home screen. For more information, refer to “App Shortcuts” on page 38.

Widgets
When you first turn on your tablet, there are various widgets on the center Home screen. They can also appear on the Home screens to the left and right of the center Home screen.

Widgets are self-contained applications that you can place on the Home screens to access your favorite features.

Adding Widgets to a Home screen
1. Navigate to the Home screen on which you want to place the Widget.
2. From the Home screen, tap Apps.
3. Select the Widgets tab.

Note: Swipe across the screen horizontally to view all Widgets.

4. Touch and hold the widget's icon, then slide your finger where you want to place the icon and release it.
**Note:** There must be room on the screen where you want to place the widget, otherwise the widget will not add to the Home screen.

5. Tap **Back** to return to the Home screen.

**Removing Widgets**

- Touch and hold the Widget until the **Delete** icon displays, then drag the Widget toward the top of the screen and drop it over the **Delete** icon.

**Widget Options**

The following widgets are available:

- **AccuWeather.com**: Display the forecast from AccuWeather. Tap the widget to choose locations.
- **Analog Clock**: Display an analog clock. Tap the widget to view alarms or add a new alarm. For more information, refer to “**Alarm**” on page 157.
- **AP Mobile**: Displays Top Stories and Showbiz, Sports, World, and U.S. news from AP Mobile.
- **Bonus Apps**: Displays free T-Mobile services and apps that are compatible with your device.
- **Book**: Tap this widget and then tap a book for quick access to the book. For more information, refer to “**Play Books**” on page 184.
- **Bookmark**: Choose one of your bookmarks then tap the widget to open the website.
- **Calendar**: Display a calendar. For more information, refer to “**Calendar**” on page 160.
- **Calendar (mini today)**: Display a mini calendar with only today’s event listed.
- **Calendar (month)**: Display a mini calendar with only the current month displayed.
- **Calendar (tasks)**: Display a mini tasks list.
- **Contact**: Display a link to one of your contacts to quickly compose an Email or Gmail message. For more information, refer to “**Messaging**” on page 70.
- **Contact**: Display a shortcut to one of your contact entries. For more information, refer to “**Contacts**” on page 61.
- **Digital clock**: Display the digital time, the day, and the date.
- **Directions & Navigation**: Get directions and navigation from Google Maps. For more information, refer to “**Maps**” on page 173.
• **Dropbox**: provides quick access to your Dropbox information. For more information, refer to “Dropbox” on page 165.

• **Dual clock (analog)**: Display the date and time for two different locations.

• **Email**: Display your email inbox. For more information, refer to “Email” on page 82.

• **Gmail**: Send and receive email with Gmail, Google’s web-based email. For more information, refer to “Gmail” on page 78.

• **Google Play Books**: Read eBooks from the web-based Google Play Books service. For more information, refer to “Play Books” on page 184.

• **Google Play Music**: Use this widget to control the playback of songs playing in the Music app. For more information, refer to “Options While Selecting a Song” on page 123.

• **Google Search**: Display a Google Search bar. For more information, refer to “Search” on page 192.

• **Google+ photos**: Display a shortcut to Google+ photo postings. For more information, refer to “Google+” on page 135.

• **Google+ posts**: Display a shortcut to Google+ posts. For more information, refer to “Google+” on page 135.

• **Kies via Wi-Fi**: Allows computers running the KIES software to access your tablet. Both the tablet and the computer have to be on the same Wi-Fi network.

• **Latitude**: Displays your current location. Tap the location to open Maps, tap the check mark to open the Check in at pop-up, or tap the Refresh button to update your Latitude™ list of friends. For more information, refer to “Latitude” on page 169.

• **Lookout Security**: Provides quick access to your device’s Lookout Security features. For more information, refer to “Lookout Security” on page 172.

• **Media Hub**: Samsung Media Hub is your one stop for the hottest movie and TV content. You can rent or purchase your favorite content and watch from the convenience of anywhere. For more information, refer to “Media Hub” on page 116.

• **Memo**: Create and save a memo on a Home screen. For more information, refer to “Memo” on page 177.

• **MobileLife**: Provides access to various MobileLife applications such as Calendar and Shopping List. Options include: MobileLife Calendar(2x3)(3x3) (4x2) (4x4), MobileLife Shopping List(3x3)(4x4), MobileLife To Do List(3x3)(4x4). For more information, refer to “MobileLife Organizer” on page 179.
• **Music Player**: The Music Player allows you to play music files that you have stored on your device and memory card. You can also create playlists. For more information, refer to “**Music Player**” on page 128.

• **Music playlist**: Choose a music playlist to access from a home screen. For more information, refer to “**Playing, Renaming, or Deleting a Playlist**” on page 126.

• **Picture frame**: Select one or more pictures and then tap the arrow on the widget for a slide show. For more information, refer to “**Gallery**” on page 168.

• **Play Store**: Download applications from the Google Play™ Store. For more information, refer to “**Play Store**” on page 187.

• **Program monitor**: Display the number of active applications. Tap to launch Task Manager. For more information, refer to “**Task Manager**” on page 15.

• **Pulse (large)**: Lets you add a topical Pulse widget. Choices are: Pulse Hints, Time Magazine, Cool Hunting, CNN Money, SB Nation, Fortune Tech, The Wall Street Journal, and Facebook Links. Tap your choice and then tap **Save**. Pulse article titles and the first lines of an article are displayed. Tap the title block to display that article’s first lines. Tap the introduction area to link to the article in Pulse. For more information, refer to “**Pulse**” on page 190.

• **Pulse (small)**: Lets you add a topical Pulse widget, like Pulse (large), but only the article titles are displayed. Tap a title block to link to the article in Pulse. For more information, refer to “**Pulse**” on page 190.

• **S Bookmarks**: Create bookmarks for your favorite websites. For more information, refer to “**Using Bookmarks**” on page 138.

• **Settings shortcut**: Allows you to create a shortcut to a particular Settings item. For more information, refer to “**Settings**” on page 201.

• **Slacker Radio**: Access your social networks, like Facebook, Twitter, and LinkedIn all in one place. For more information, refer to “**Slacker Radio**” on page 193.
- **Social Hub**: Access your social networks, like Facebook, Twitter, and LinkedIn all in one place. For more information, refer to “Social Hub” on page 193.

- **Software update**: This shortcut makes updating your device software even easier. For more information, refer to “Software Update” on page 241.

- **T-Mobile TV (large)**: places a large on-screen window displaying the contents of the current T-Mobile TV selection. For more information, refer to “T-Mobile TV” on page 195.

- **T-Mobile TV (small)**: places a small on-screen window displaying the contents of the current T-Mobile TV selection. For more information, refer to “T-Mobile TV” on page 195.

- **Traffic**: Enter a name for the widget and a destination, and then tap Save. Tap the widget to use the Traffic component of the Maps application. For more information, refer to “Maps” on page 173.

- **Video Player**: Play and manage videos stored on your tablet. For more information, refer to “Video Player” on page 106.

- **Yahoo! Finance**: Search for and add stocks. For more information, refer to “Yahoo! Finance” on page 197.

- **YouTube**: Search YouTube and watch videos. For more information, refer to “YouTube” on page 199.

- **Zinio**: provides quick-access to your Zinio™ digital magazines. For more information, refer to “Zinio” on page 200.

### App Shortcuts

Use App Shortcuts for quick access to applications or features, such as Email or other applications.

#### Adding Shortcuts to a Screen

1. Navigate to the Home screen on which you want to place the App Shortcut.
2. Tap Apps.
   
   – or –

   Touch and hold on the screen until the Home screen options pop-up displays then tap Add to Home screen ➔ Apps and widgets.

3. Tap the Apps tab.
4. Touch and hold the application icon, then slide your finger where you want to place the icon and release it. For a list of applications, see “Apps Screen” on page 41.
5. Touch and hold the App Shortcut and then drag the application icon to reposition it on the Home screen.

**Removing App Shortcuts**

- Touch and hold the App Shortcut until the **Delete** icon displays, then drag the App Shortcut toward the top of the screen and drop it over the **Delete** icon.

**Wallpapers**

You can choose a picture to display on the Home Screen, Lock screen, or on both the Home and Lock screens. Choose from preloaded wallpaper images or select a photo you have downloaded or taken with the Camera.

1. From a Home screen, touch and hold on the screen. The **Home screen** options pop-up displays.
2. Tap **Home screen**, **Lock screen**, or **Home and lock screens**.

   The **Select wallpaper from** pop-up displays the following options:

   - **Gallery**: Access the Gallery to select a photo. Tap a photo to select it. Crop and resize the picture, if desired. Tap **Done** to save the picture as wallpaper or **Cancel** to exit.
   - **Live wallpapers**: Choose from pre-loaded interactive animated wallpapers. Tap a wallpaper to see an example. If available, tap **Settings** to view options for the selection. Tap **Set wallpaper** to save your choice or tap **Back** to return to the Live wallpapers menu.
   - **Wallpapers**: Choose from pre-loaded wallpaper images. Tap an image to view it. Tap **Set wallpaper** to save it as wallpaper or tap **Back** to return to the Live wallpapers menu.

---

**Note:** Live wallpapers is not available for the Lock screen.
**Mini App Tray**

There are shortcuts available that link to apps that you might need while working in other apps, such as Alarm, Calculator, Calendar, Email, Music player, Pen memo, Task manager, and World clock. In some cases, these shortcuts are actually links to the part of the app you need most and they contain a link to the actual app where you can use other functions.

1. From any screen, tap **Mini App Tray** at the bottom, center of the screen. The Mini App Tray icons display.

2. Tap **Edit** at the right side of the tray to customize the Mini App Tray. For more information, refer to “Customizing the Mini App Tray” on page 41.
   – or –

   Tap one of the icons to display a mini app pop-up.

3. Tap options (such as +) to create new app items (such as alarms or events).

4. Tap items in the body of the pop-up, such as an email entry or keys on the Calculator.

5. Tap to link to the application. For more information, refer to “Applications” on page 42.

6. Tap to close the mini app pop-up.

The pop-up varies depending on the application. Various controls display at the top of the pop-up and other information is displayed in the body of the pop-up.
Customizing the Mini App Tray

You can choose applications to display on the Mini App Tray and arrange them in any order.

1. From any screen, tap Mini App Tray at the bottom, center of the screen.
2. Tap Edit at the right side of the tray.
3. Touch and drag apps in and out of the tray or to another position in the tray.
4. Tap Done to save your changes.

Apps Screen

The Apps screen holds all applications installed on your wireless device. Applications that you download and install from the Play Store™ or from the Web are also added to a Home screen.

The Apps icons are arranged in a customizable grid.

To arrange the Apps icons in alphabetical order:

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps.
2. Tap Menu ➔ View type ➔ Alphabetical grid.

To manually change the order of the icons on the Apps screen:

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps.
2. Tap Menu ➔ Edit.
3. Touch and hold an icon and drag it to a new position.
4. Tap Save to save the changes.

You can place shortcuts to applications on the Home screen for quick access to the application. For more information, refer to “App Shortcuts” on page 38.

To view your downloaded applications:

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps.
2. Tap Menu ➔ Downloaded applications.
3. Tap an icon on the Downloaded applications screen to launch the application.
   — or —
   Add an App Shortcut to a Home screen by dragging the App icon onto the Home Screen. For more information, refer to “App Shortcuts” on page 38.
Application Information

To view information about an App, such as the amount of storage it uses, force the App to stop, uninstall updates, and clear data:

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps.
2. Touch and hold an App icon, then drag it to App info to open a screen with details about the App.
3. Tap Back to return to the Home screen.

Applications

The following is an alphabetical list of the applications that come preloaded on your device.

Access T-Mobile
This application provides you online access to account information such as your current activity, billing information, service plans, downloads, and other information.
For more information, refer to “Access T-Mobile” on page 156.

Alarm
Schedule alarms to remind you of appointments or events, or as a wake-up.
For more information, refer to “Alarm” on page 157.

AllShare
Synchronize your device with your TV.
For more information, refer to “AllShare” on page 158.

Amazon
Provides access to Amazon.com via a built-in mobile application.
For more information, refer to “Amazon” on page 159.

Asphalt6
Provides access to a built-in HD racing video game.
For more information, refer to “Asphalt 6” on page 159.
Blio eBooks T-Mobile

Blio® eBooks is an eReading application that presents eBooks just like the printed version, in full color, and with all of the features you’d want from an eReader.

For more information, refer to “Blio eBooks T-Mobile” on page 159.

Calculator

The calculator provides the basic arithmetic functions to solve simple arithmetic problems and advanced operators to solve more complex problems.

For more information, refer to “Calculator” on page 160.

Calendar

Record events and appointments to manage your schedule.

For more information, refer to “Calendar” on page 160.

Camera

Take photos or record videos. A shortcut to Camera displays on the Home screen by default.

For more information, refer to “Camera” on page 164.

Contacts

Save and manage contact information for your friends and colleagues. For more information, refer to “Contacts” on page 164.

Downloads

Files, apps, and other items you download in Internet, Gmail, Email, or in other ways, are stored on your tablet’s internal storage. Use the Downloads app to view, reopen, or delete what you have downloaded.

For more information, refer to “Downloads” on page 164.
Dropbox
Provides access to your desktop files directly from your device.
For more information, refer to “Dropbox” on page 165.

Email
Send and receive email from your device.
For more information, refer to “Email” on page 82.

Files
Find, view and manage files stored on an optional installed memory card.
For more information, refer to “Files” on page 167.

Gallery
View and manage photos stored on your device.
For more information, refer to “Gallery” on page 110.

Get Web Now
This is an applications that allows you to purchase pre-paid Web minutes if you do not already have a monthly data plan.
For more information, refer to “Get Web Now” on page 168.

Gmail
Send and receive email with Gmail, Google’s Web-based email.
For more information, refer to “Gmail” on page 78.

Google+
Share updates and see what is going on around you with Google+.
For more information, refer to “Google+” on page 135.

Internet
Access the Internet. A shortcut to Internet displays on the Home screen by default.
For more information, refer to “Internet” on page 135.
**Latitude**
Use Google Latitude to locate your friends on a map and share or hide your location.
For more information, refer to “Latitude” on page 169.

**Local**
Displays company locations as markers on Google Maps. When viewing an area you can quickly locate a business or person, find out more information about the business, see coupons, public responses, and more.
For more information, refer to “Local” on page 171.

**Lookout Security**
Lookout Security™ provides mobile device-specific security features that are coupled with a minimal performance hit.
For more information, refer to “Lookout Security” on page 172.

**Maps**
Find locations and get directions with Google maps.
For more information, refer to “Maps” on page 173.

**Media Hub**
Browse the latest movies and TV shows, then rent or purchase the media for viewing on your device.
For more information, refer to “Media Hub” on page 116.

**Memo**
Create text memos and use Bluetooth to send memos.
For more information, refer to “Memo” on page 177.

**Messaging**
Provides access to text and multimedia messaging (SMS and MMS).
For more information, refer to “Creating and Sending Messages” on page 70.
Messenger
With Google Messenger™, you can bring groups of friends together into a simple group conversation.
For more information, refer to “Messenger” on page 95.

MobileLife Organizer
Organizes your family’s calendar, family shopping list, To-Do list, and Journal entries in one place.
For more information, refer to “MobileLife Organizer” on page 179.

Music Player
Play music and other audio files that you copy from your computer.
For more information, refer to “Music Player” on page 128.

Navigation
Use Google Maps Navigation™ to search for locations, with turn-by-turn directions.
For more information, refer to “Navigation” on page 180.

Pen memo
This app is not only useful, but lots of fun, if you like to draw. Pen memo lets you type memos or draw pictures.
For more information, refer to “Pen Memo” on page 182.

Photo editor
To perfect any photos stored on your tablet, use Photo editor to crop, rotate, resize, adjust color and contrast, and much more.
For more information, refer to “Photo Editor” on page 184.

Play Books
Read eBooks from the web-based Google Play Books service.
For more information, refer to “Play Books” on page 184.
Play Movies
Use the Play Movies app to view movies you rent from Google Play™ Movies or play any of your personal videos stored on your tablet.
For more information, refer to “Play Movies” on page 119.

Play Music
Play music and other audio files that you copy from your computer with the Music app.
For more information, refer to “Play Music” on page 119.

Play Store
Browse, download, and install Android applications. A shortcut to Play Store displays on the Home screen by default.
For more information, refer to “Play Store” on page 187.

Pro Apps
Provides access to compatible productivity tools.
For more information, refer to “Pro Apps” on page 190.

Pulse News gives you news visually in bite-sized pieces.
For more information, refer to “Pulse” on page 190.

Quickoffice HD
The Quickoffice application allows you to create and save Microsoft Word, Excel, and Powerpoint documents. You can also view existing PDFs.
For more information, refer to “Quickoffice HD” on page 190.

Search
Use the Google search engine to search the Web.
For more information, refer to “Search” on page 192.

Settings
Configure your device to your preferences.
For more information, refer to “Settings” on page 201.
**SimCity Deluxe HD**
Provides an HD version of the popular SimCity game.
For more information, refer to “SimCity Deluxe HD” on page 192.

**Slacker Radio**
Slacker® Radio offers free, internet radio for mobile devices.
For more information, refer to “Slacker Radio” on page 193.

**Social Hub**
Access your social networks, like Facebook, YouTube, and Twitter, all in one place.
For more information, refer to “Social Hub” on page 193.

**T-Mobile TV**
Allows you to watch live mobile TV on your device. This application is a subscription service. For more information, refer to “T-Mobile TV” on page 195.

**Talk:**
Chat with other Google Talk users. For more information, refer to “Google Talk” on page 91.

**Task manager**
View and manage active applications. For more information, refer to “Task Manager” on page 15.

**TegraZone Games**
Tegra Zone® Games is an Android app for your NVIDIA® Tegra™-powered mobile device, you can easily find games that are optimized to exploit the full potential of your device's built-in Tegra mobile processor. For more information, refer to “TegraZone Games” on page 195.

**Video Player**
Play and manage videos stored on your tablet. For more information, refer to “Video Player” on page 106.

**World clock**
View the date and time in any time zone. For more information, refer to “World Clock” on page 196.
YouTube
View and upload YouTube videos, right from your device. For more information, refer to “YouTube” on page 199.

Zinio
Launches a digital magazine reader. Zinio® has transformed your favorite print magazines into digital format. For more information, refer to “Zinio” on page 200.
Section 3: Entering Text

This section describes how to enter words, letters, punctuation and numbers when you need to enter text.

Text Input Methods

Your device offers three text input methods.

- **Android Keyboard**: This input method provides a virtual QWERTY keyboard that is similar to that if a Samsung keypad and allows you to enter text by tapping keys on the screen. For more information, refer to “Android Keyboard Settings” on page 229.

- **Google voice typing**: You can use your voice to enter text using the Voice input feature. Your device recognizes your speech and enters text for you. For more information, refer to “Using Speech Recognition” on page 59.

- **Samsung keyboard**: The Samsung keyboard is also a virtual QWERTY keypad that allows you to enter text by tapping keys on the screen. The Samsung keyboard includes predictive text, which matches your key taps to common words so that you can select the word to enter it into your text.

- **Swype**: Swype™ is a new text input method that allows you to enter words by gliding your finger over the virtual QWERTY keypad, lifting your finger between words. You can also enable Word prediction, which matches your key taps to common words.

Changing the Input Method

When entering text, you can select the text input method.

1. Tap (bottom-right of screen) ➔ **Set up input methods** in the Status bar. The Set up input methods pop-up displays.

2. Select an input method to activate it.

3. Tap to display that input method’s settings.

For more information, refer to “Language and Input Settings” on page 229.
Samsung Keyboard

Your device uses a virtual QWERTY keypad for text entry called the Samsung keyboard. Use the keypad to enter letters, punctuation, numbers, and other characters into text entry fields or applications. Access the keypad by tapping any text entry field.

The keypad displays at the bottom of the screen. By default, when you rotate the device, the screen orientation updates to display the keypad at the bottom of the screen.

Using the Samsung Keyboard

The Samsung keyboard is a custom virtual QWERTY keypad, featuring predictive text. Input characters by tapping the on-screen keys with your finger or use speech recognition. As you enter characters, predictive text matches your key taps to common words and displays them. Select a word from the display to insert it into your text. For more information, refer to “Using XT9 Predictive Text” on page 53.
Configuring the Keyboard

To configure the Samsung keyboard to your preferences:

- Tap (bottom-right of screen) → Set up input methods in the Status bar. The Set up input methods pop-up displays.
- or –
  Tap Settings on the keyboard.

The Samsung keyboard settings screen displays. For more information, refer to “Configuring the Samsung keyboard” on page 230.

Entering Upper and Lower Case Letters

The default case is lower case (abc). Enter upper and lower case alphabet letters by tapping Shift to toggle the case, before tapping the letter key(s).

1. From a screen where you can enter text, tap the text input field to reveal the on-screen keyboard.

2. Tap ABC to configure the keyboard for ABC mode. Once in this mode, the text input type shows 123.
   - Tap once to switch from abc to Abc mode.
   - Uppercase mode is enabled, the Shift key background turns blue.

**Note:** After typing an initial uppercase character, the key changes to and all letters that follow are in lower case.

- **All lowercase**
  Displays when the next character is entered in lowercase. Pressing this while in 123 mode, reveals additional numeric-symbols keys.

- **Initial Uppercase**
  Displays when the first character of each word is entered as uppercase but all subsequent characters are lowercase.

- **All Uppercase**
  Displays when all characters will be entered as uppercase characters.
**Entering Symbols and Numbers**

To enter a number, tap `123`, then tap the corresponding key. To enter common symbols, tap `123` to switch to Symbols mode, then select the corresponding key. There are three pages of symbols. Tap `1/3` to switch to the next page.

While in ABC mode, touch and hold a vowel key (A, E, I, O, U, or Y) or the C, N, or S key to open a small window where you can choose an accented vowel or other alternate letter. Slide to the letter until it is highlighted, and release.

Touch and hold the Period key ( . ) to open a small window with a set of common symbols.

**Other Keypad Functions**

Touch and hold the `:-)` Emoticons key to open a small window with a set of Emoticons. Choosing a symbol with the Emoticons key causes the Emoticons key to default to that symbol until you choose another symbol.

Tap ` clipboard` to view the clipboard and manage saved text.

---

**Using XT9 Predictive Text**

XT9 is a predictive text system that has next-letter prediction and regional error correction, which compensates for users pressing the wrong keys on QWERTY keypads.

1. Tap (bottom-right of screen) ➔ **Set up input methods** in the Status bar. The Set up input methods pop-up displays.
   – or –
   Tap **Settings** on the keyboard.

   The Samsung keyboard settings screen displays.

2. Tap the **XT9** field so a green check mark appears next to the field.

3. Tap the **XT9 advanced settings** field to modify XT9 associated settings. For more information, refer to “Configuring the Samsung keyboard” on page 230.

**Note:** The XT9 option is available only when ABC mode has been selected.
4. Begin typing a word. 
A list of word options displays.

5. Tap and then select **Add word** to register a new word to XT9.
   For more information, refer to “Adding Words To Your Word List” on page 54.

6. Continue typing your message. XT9 mode can be used in portrait or landscape mode.

## Adding Words To Your Word List

To add more word options:

1. Tap (bottom-right of screen) ➔ **Set up input methods** in the Status bar. The Set up input methods pop-up displays.
   – or –
   Tap **Settings** on the keyboard.
   The Samsung keyboard settings screen displays.

2. Tap **XT9 advanced settings** ➔ **XT9 my words**.

3. Tap **Menu ➔ Add**.

4. Use the on-screen keypad to enter the word.

5. Tap **Add**.

## Deleting Words From Your Word List

To delete words from your word list:

1. Navigate to **XT9 my words**. For more information, refer to “Adding Words To Your Word List” on page 54.

2. Tap **Menu ➔ Delete**.

3. Select the existing words you want to delete or tap **Select all ➔ Delete**.

4. Tap **Delete**.
**Editing Text**

You can edit the text you enter in text fields by cutting, copying, or pasting text. These operations can be performed within and across apps. However, some apps do not support editing some or all of the text displayed while others may offer their own way to select text.

**Editing Existing Text**

**To edit text that you have entered:**

1. Tap the text at the point you want to edit.
   The Cursor displays at the point you tapped.

2. Touch and drag the Cursor to a better position, if necessary.

3. Enter additional text or delete text by repeatedly tapping the Delete key.

**Copying, Deleting, or Replacing Text**

**To select and copy, delete, or replace text:**

1. Touch and hold the text or word you want to select.
   The selected text is highlighted with a tab at each end of the selection.

2. Touch and drag either tab to select more or less text.

**Tip:** Tap Select all in the Application bar (top of the screen) to select all text in the field. Select an option and the tap on another area of the screen.

3. Depending on the action you want to take for the selected text, in the Application bar tap:
   - **Select all** to highlight all text in the field.
   - **Cut** to remove the selected text.
   - **Copy** to save the selected text to the clipboard.
   - **Paste** to paste the text currently in the clipboard.
   - **Clipboard** to view what is currently in the clipboard.
   
   Enter text by typing or speaking to replace the selection with what you type.
   
   - or -
   
   Tap the Delete key to delete the selected text.
Pasting Text

To paste previously copied text:
1. Tap the text at the point you want to paste the copied text.
   The Cursor displays at the point you tapped.
2. Tap the cursor. A pop-up displays.
3. Tap PASTE from within the pop-up.

To paste text directly from the clipboard:
1. Tap the Clipboard key to display the text saved to the clipboard.
2. Tap a text block to paste that text where the Cursor is positioned.

Closing the Keypad

- Tap Close Keypad.

Entering Text Using Swype

Swype™ is a new way to enter text on touch screens. Instead of tapping each key, use your finger to trace over each letter of a word. For each word, place your finger on the first letter and glide to the subsequent letters, lifting on the last letter.

The following example shows how to enter the word “this”. Put your finger down on the “t” and, without lifting, glide it to the “h”, then to the “i”, then over to the “s”.

![Keypad Diagram]

- Language
- Shift
- New Paragraph
- Delete Key
- Swype Key
- Numeric Keypad
- Space Bar
- Resize Keypad
- Speech Recognition
- Symbols Keypad
Here are a few tips to get you started:

- **Auto-spacing**: When you finish a word, just lift your finger and start the next word.
- **Double letters**: Just “scribble” on the key.
- **Auto-capitalization**: Swype recognizes and capitalizes the first word of sentences. If you want to capitalize a word that is not at the beginning of a sentence, just glide above the keypad before gliding over the next letter.
- **Contractions**: Swype recognizes most words that include an apostrophe, just swype the letters of the word, including the apostrophe.

- **Punctuation**: Touch and hold a key to view a punctuation menu and make a selection.
- **Accented characters**: Just glide through the letters of the word. Swype usually recognizes the word and correctly accents the letters.
- **Error correction**: If you make a mistake, double-tap on the word you want to change.

### Configuring Swype

Configure Swype to your preferences.

- While entering text, touch and hold the \[Swype Key\] to display the Settings screen. For more information, refer to “Configuring the Swype Keypad” on page 232.

### Swype Help

You can get tips and help about using Swype.

1. Touch and hold the \[Swype Key\].
   - The Swype Settings screen displays.

2. Tap **How to Swype** and then tap the desired topic.
**Entering Symbols and Numbers**

Using the Swype Keypad:
- Touch and hold on a key to enter the symbol or number at the top of the key.
- Touch and hold on a key until a menu of all characters available on that key appears, then tap a character to enter it.
- For more symbols, tap Shift, then tap the corresponding key.
- Tap 123 to switch to the numeric keypad and quickly enter numbers and mathematical operators.
- Tap +!=. to switch to the symbols keypad. Tap  to view additional symbols.
- Tap ABC to display the alphabetic keypad.

**Using Swype Speech Recognition**

Enter text by speaking. Swype recognizes your speech and enters text for you.
- Tap . At the Speak now prompt, speak the text you want to enter.

**Editing Keypad**

The Editing Keypad provides a quick way to move the cursor and highlight text. If the application in which you are working supports editing, you can cut, copy, or paste highlighted text.

**To display the Editing keypad:**
1. Swype from the Swype Key to the Numeric Key. The Editing keypad displays.
2. Select an edit key.
3. Tap  to resize the Editing Keypad for easier use.
Using Speech Recognition

You can use your voice to enter text using the Voice input feature, which lets you enter text by speaking. The Samsung keyboard recognizes your speech and enters text for you.

1. Tap 📴 (bottom-right of screen) → **Set up input methods** in the Status bar. The Set up input methods pop-up displays.

2. Tap **Google voice typing** to enable **Voice Input**.
   For more information, refer to “Language and Input Settings” on page 229.

3. At the **Listening** prompt, speak clearly and distinctly into the microphone.
   The software converts your voice to text, which is displayed in the message.

4. Keep speaking to add more text.

5. Tap **Done** to display the Samsung keyboard.

---

**Note:** The Speech Recognition feature works best when you break your message down into smaller segments.
Section 4: Contacts and Accounts

This section explains how to manage contacts and accounts.

Accounts

Your device can synchronize with a variety of accounts. With synchronization, information on your device is updated with any information that changes in your accounts.

- **Facebook**: Add your Facebook account to sync Contacts.
- **LinkedIn**: Add your LinkedIn account to sync data with LinkedIn.
- **Twitter**: Add your Twitter Social Network Service to sync and access your data.
- **Blio ebooks (T-Mobile)**: Add your Blio account to sync and access your data.
- **Dropbox**: Add your Dropbox account.
- **Email**: Add and Email account to sync Contacts. For more information, refer to “Email” on page 82.
- **Google**: Add your Google account to sync your Contacts, Calendar, and Gmail. For more information, refer to “Gmail” on page 78.
- **Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync**: Add your Exchange account to sync Contacts, Calendar, and Email.
- **Samsung account**: Add your Samsung account. For more information, refer to “Creating a Samsung Account” on page 14.
- **T-Mobile Contacts**: Add your T-Mobile Backup service to sync your Contacts.

Setting Up Your Accounts

Set up and manage your synchronized accounts with the Accounts and sync setting.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings ➔ Accounts and sync.
2. Tap Add account, then select an account type.
3. Follow the prompts to enter your account credentials to complete the set-up process.
4. The device communicates with account servers to set up your account. When complete, your account displays in the Manage accounts area of the Accounts and sync screen.
Contacts

Store contact information for your friends, family, and colleagues to quickly access information or to send a message.

To access Contacts:

- From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Contacts.

**Note:** If you have not already set up a Google account, you will be prompted to set one up before you create any new Contacts entries.

Creating Contacts

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Contacts ➔ .
2. Tap an account or Device.
3. Tap the Photo ID to set up a photo to identify the contact.
   - Picture: Choose a photo from the Gallery.
   - Take picture: Display the Camera and take a photo of the contact.

4. Tap contact fields to display the keyboard and enter information:

**Tip:** Tap the screen and swipe up or down to display additional fields.

**Note:** The label entries below can change and are dependant on the selected destination type (ex: the Other and Custom might not appear with an Exchange ActiveSync account destination type).

- **Name:** Enter a first name for the contact. Tap ✅ to enter a Name prefix, First name, Middle name, Last name, and Name suffix.
- **Phone:** Enter a telephone number, then tap the Label tab to choose a label from Mobile, Work, Home, Main, Work Fax, Home Fax, Pager, Other, Custom to create a custom label, or Callback.
- **Email:** Enter an email address, then tap the Label tab to choose a label from Home, Work, Other, or Custom to create a custom label.
• **Address**: Enter an address, then tap the Label tab to choose a label from **Home**, **Work**, **Other**, or **Custom** to create a custom label.

• **Events**: Tap (+) to display an event label and field. Enter the event date, then tap the Label tab to choose a label from **Birthday**, **Anniversary**, **Other**, or **Custom** to create a custom event. Tap (+) to add additional events.

• **Groups**: Tap this field to display the Select group screen. To assign the contact to one or more groups, tap the check box next to each group. When enabled, a check mark appears in the check box. For more information about Groups, see “Groups” on page 67.

5. Tap (+) to add additional field. Tap (-) to remove an unused field.

6. Tap **Add another field** to add these additional fields: **Phonetic name**, **Organization**, **IM**, **Notes**, **Nickname**, **Website**, **Internet call**, and **Relationship**.

7. Tap **Back** to remove the keyboard.

8. When you finish entering information, tap **Save**.  
   – or –  
   Tap **Cancel ➔ OK** to cancel and discard changes.

### Tip:
Display a contact’s record and tap the **Email** field to send an email, tap the **Address** field to display the address on a map, or tap the **Website** field to link to the website.

### Updating Contacts

To update an existing contact:

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps ➔ Contacts**.
2. Tap a contact in the Contacts list (left screen area) to view its information.
3. Tap **Edit**.
4. Continue entering contact information. For more information, refer to “Creating Contacts” on page 61.

### Deleting Contacts

To delete a contact:

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps ➔ Contacts**.
2. Tap a contact in the Contacts list (left screen area) to view its information, and then select **Delete**. At the prompt, tap **OK**.
Managing Photo IDs

To remove or update a contact’s Photo ID:
1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Contacts.
2. Tap Edit.
3. Select the Photo ID, then tap Remove, Picture, or Take picture.

Contacts Display Options

There are various ways to display your Contacts and general Contacts settings.
1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Contacts.
2. Tap Groups, Favorites, or Contacts tabs above the Contacts List area (upper-left), to view contacts various ways:
   • Groups: Displays the possible Groups, such as Not assigned, Co-workers, Family, Friends, and so on. The number of contacts in the group is displayed next to the group name. Tap a group name to show only contacts in that group. For more information, refer to “Creating a New Group” on page 67.
   • Favorites: Show only your favorite, or starred, contacts. For more information, refer to “Favorites” on page 69.
3. From the Contacts list, tap Menu to display all or some of these options:
   • Delete contacts. Tap the check mark the box next to each contact you want to delete. Tap Delete and then tap OK.
   • Merge with Google: Merges the current contact with your Google account contacts.
   • Send email: Sends an email to the selected contact.
   • Send message: Sends a text message to the selected contact.
   • History: Displays information about the selected contact.
   • Join contact: Join a contact to one or more other contacts. For more information, refer to “Joining Contacts” on page 65.
   • Mark as default: If a contact has multiple email addresses, for example, tap the field that should be the default value.
   • Share namecard via: Shares the selected namecard using Bluetooth, Dropbox, Email, Gmail, Messaging, or through Wi-Fi Direct.
   • Print namecard: Check mark the fields you want to print and then tap Print. You can only print on a Samsung printer.
• **Contacts to display**: Select the contacts you want to display in this inbox (All contacts, Google, Device, or Customized list).

• **Import/Export**: Use the USB cable to import your contacts from, or export your contacts to, a storage device, such as a PC. For more information, refer to “Importing and Exporting Contacts” on page 66.

• **Accounts**: Displays the Accounts and sync screen so you can manage or synchronize this account.

• **Settings**: Configure contact settings:
  - **Only contacts with phones**: Tap to check the box to only display contacts that have phone numbers.
  - **List by**: List contacts by *First name* or *Last name*.
  - **Display contacts by**: Display contact names as *First name first* or *Last name first*.

• **Send contact**: Sets parameters for sending contact information. Tap **Settings** to access these settings:
  - **Send all namecards**: Allows you to transmit all of your current Contact entries at a single time. If the recipient device does not support this feature, some or all Contact entries might not be received.
  - **Send individual namecards**: Allows you to transmit single contacts, one at a time. The recipient must accept each namecard as it is received. This method of transmission ensures all contacts are received.

4. From the **Groups** list, select a group and then tap **Menu** to display these Group-specific options:
  - **Search**: Search the group for a contact.
  - **Delete**: Tap one or more groups and select **Done**.
  - **Edit**: Change the Group name or tap **Add member** to add or delete group members.
  - **Add member**: Add a new member to this group.
  - **Remove member**: Remove a selected member from this group.
• **Send email**: To send an email to one or more members of the group, tap the check mark the box next to each contact you want to send to, or tap Select all, and tap ✔ Done. Select Compose Email or Compose Gmail as the method for sending the email.

• **Change order**: Changes the order of how the groups display.

**Linked Contacts**

Your device can synchronize with multiple accounts, including Google, Corporate Exchange, and other email providers. When you synchronize contacts from these accounts with your device, you may have multiple contacts for one person.

Linking, or joining, imported contact records allows you to see all the contact’s numbers and addresses together in one contact entry. Linking also helps you keep your contacts updated, because any changes that your contacts make to their information in the respective accounts is automatically updated the next time you synchronize with the account.

**Joining Contacts**

1. From a Home screen, tap \[\text{Apps} \rightarrow \text{Contacts}\].
2. Tap a contact in the Contacts list to view its information.
3. Tap \[\text{Menu} \rightarrow \text{Join contact}\].
4. Select the contact you want to join.
   The joined contact’s information is displayed with the original contact’s information.
5. Repeat Steps 3 and 4 to join other contacts.

**Separating Contacts**

1. From a Home screen, tap \[\text{Apps} \rightarrow \text{Contacts}\].
2. Tap a contact in the Contacts list to view its information.
3. Tap \[\text{Menu} \rightarrow \text{Separate contact}\].
   A list of Joined contacts displays.
4. Tap \[\rightarrow OK\] to separate a joined contact.
   The contact is removed from the list.
Sharing Contact Information
You can send a contact’s information by way of Bluetooth to other Bluetooth devices or in an Email or Gmail as an attachment.

Note: Not all Bluetooth devices accept contacts and not all devices support transfers of multiple contacts. Check the target device’s documentation.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Contacts.
2. Tap Menu ➔ Share namecard via.

Tip: Set up a contact record for yourself to share your information with others.

3. At the prompt, choose a sending method. Options are:
   - **Bluetooth**: For more information, refer to “Bluetooth” on page 148.
   - **Dropbox**: For more information, refer to “Dropbox” on page 165.
   - **Email**: For more information, refer to “Email” on page 82.
   - **Gmail**: For more information, refer to “Composing and Sending Gmail” on page 80.
   - **Messaging**: For more information, refer to “Creating and Sending Messages” on page 70.
   - **Wi-Fi Direct**: To send Contacts entries directly to an external device through a Wi-Fi connection

4. Follow the prompts to send the contact information.

Importing and Exporting Contacts
To back up and restore your contacts information, you can export your contacts list to a storage device, such as a PC, or import your contacts list (previously exported) from a storage device.

1. Use the USB cable to connect your device to the storage device.
2. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Contacts.
3. Tap Menu ➔ Import/Export.
4. Tap Import from USB storage, Export to USB storage, Import from SIM card, Export to SIM card, or Send namecard via, then follow the prompts to complete the operation.
Groups

Assign contacts to Groups to make searching for contacts faster or to quickly send messages to group members.

Creating a New Group

Create a new group when you add or edit a contact.
1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Contacts.
2. Tap Groups above the Contacts List.
3. Tap ➔ Group name field and use the keyboard to enter a new Group name.
4. Tap Save to save the new group name.

Tip: Contacts can belong to more than one group. Just tap the contact’s Groups field and tap each group.

Once you create a new group, the Contacts List can be set to display only the contacts in that group. For more information, refer to “Contacts Display Options” on page 63.

Renaming a Group

To rename a group that you created:
1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Contacts.
2. Tap Groups and then select the group you want to rename.
3. Tap Menu ➔ Edit.
4. Tap Group name field and use the keyboard to enter a new Group name.
5. Tap Save to save the new group name.

Deleting Groups

To delete a group that you created:
1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Contacts.
2. Tap Groups and then select any group you want to delete.
3. Tap Menu ➔ Delete.

The groups that can be deleted display.
4. Select either **Select all**, **Starred in Android**, or the name of each group to delete.

5. Tap ✅ **Delete** to delete the groups. Choose from **Group only** or **Group and group members**.

**Adding Group Members**

To add a contact to a group, just Edit a contact’s Group field. For more information, refer to “Updating Contacts” on page 62.

**To add multiple contacts to a group:**

1. From a Home screen, tap 📘 Apps ➔ 📞 Contacts.
2. Tap **Groups** and then tap the group to which you want to add members.
3. Tap ☐️ Menu ➔ Add member.
   
   The contacts that can be added display.
4. Tap **Select all** or the name of each contact to add.
5. Tap ✅ **Done** to add the contacts to the group.

**Removing Group Members**

To remove contacts from a group:

1. From a Home screen, tap 📘 Apps ➔ 📞 Contacts.
2. Tap **Groups** and then select the group from which you want to remove members.
3. Tap ☐️ Menu ➔ Remove member.
4. Tap **Select all** or the name of each contact to remove.
5. Tap ✅ **Done** to remove the contacts.

Contacts are removed from the group and the group name is removed from each contact’s **Group** field.
**Favorites**

Mark contact records with a ⭐ gold star to identify them as favorites.

**Adding Favorites**

To add a contact to the Favorites list:
1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Contacts.
2. Tap a contact to display it.
3. Tap the ⭐ Star next to the contact name so that it turns gold ⭐.

**Tip:** You do not have to edit the contact to change the Starred status.

**Accessing Favorites**

You can view your favorites two ways for fast viewing or messaging.

**To view your favorites list:**
1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Contacts.
2. Tap Groups above the Contacts List and then select Starred in Android.
   - or –
   Tap Favorites above the Contacts List.
   Only your starred contacts display.

**Removing Favorites**

To remove one or more contacts from your favorites list:
1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Contacts.
2. Tap Favorites above the Contacts List.
3. Tap Menu ➔ Remove from favorites.
4. Tap Select all or the name of each contact to remove.
5. Tap ✔ Done to remove the contacts.

**To remove one contact from your favorites list:**
1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Contacts.
2. Tap a contact to display it.
3. Tap the ⭐ Star next to the contact’s name so that it turns gray ⭐ to remove it from the Favorites list.
Section 5: Messaging

This section describes how to send and receive messages and other features associated with messaging.

Types of Messages

Your device supports these types of messages:

- **Text Messages**: Send and receive both SMS (text) and MMS (multimedia) text messages
- **Gmail**: Send and receive Gmail from your Google account.
- **Email**: Send and receive email from your email accounts, including Corporate Exchange mail.
- **Google Talk**: Chat with other Google Talk users.

**Note**: 3G and Messaging features are supported, whereas Calling features are not supported.

Creating and Sending Messages

The Short Message Service (SMS) lets you send and receive text messages to and from other mobile phones or email addresses. To use this feature, you may need to subscribe to your service provider’s message service.

The Multimedia Messaging Service (MMS) lets you send and receive multimedia messages (such as picture, video, and audio messages) to and from other mobile phones or email addresses. To use this feature, you may need to subscribe to your service provider’s multimedia message service.

**Important!** When creating a message, adding an image, a sound file, or a video clip to a text message changes the message from a text message to a multimedia message.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Messaging ➔ Compose new message.
2. Tap the **Enter recipient** field to manually enter a recipient.
   – or –
   Tap [ ] to select from one of the following:
   • **Groups**: to select a recipient from the Group list.
   • **Favorites**: to select a recipient from the Favorites list.
   • **Contacts**: to select a recipient from your Contacts list (valid entries must have a wireless phone number or email address).

3. If adding a recipient from the above categories, tap the contact to place a checkmark then tap **Done**. The contact displays in the recipient field.

   **Note:** Delete any unnecessary members by tapping their name/number in the recipient area and selecting **Delete**.

4. Add more recipients by tapping either the **Enter recipient** field or [ ] and selecting recipients.

5. Tap the **Enter message** field and use the on-screen keypad to enter a message.

6. Review your message and tap [ ] **Send**.

If you have more than one recipient, the same text message is sent to all recipients in the Enter Recipients field.

**Note:** If you exit a message before you send it, it will be automatically saved as a draft.

### Message Options

**Options before composing a message**

1. From a Home screen, tap [ ] **Apps → Messaging**.

2. From within an open message, tap [ ] **Menu** to display additional messaging options:
   • **Insert smiley**: allows you to add insert smiley icons images (emoticons).
   • **Preview** (only in MMS): allows you to add preview the MMS message prior to delivery.
   • **Add text**: allows you to add text items from sources such as: Calendar, Location, Contacts, and Text templates.
   • **Add to Contacts**: adds the current recipient as a new Contacts entry.
   • **View contact**: reveals the current Contact’s overview screen.
• **Add slide**: converts an SMS message into an MMS (Multimedia) message and allows you to attach an existing slideshow.
• **Remove slide**: allows you to remove a previously attached slideshow.
• **Add subject**: allows you to enter a subject.
• **Duration (5 sec)**: allows you to assign a duration for each slides to appear on-screen.
• **Layout(bottom)**: allows you to choose the message layout by selecting the text to appear at the top or bottom of the MMS.
• **Text templates**: provides quick access to your message text templates. For more information, refer to “Text Templates” on page 77.
• **Settings**: adjust the Messaging application settings. For more information, refer to “Messaging Settings” on page 76.
• **Delete threads**: allows you to erase the current message thread.

**Adding attachments to a message**

To add an attachment to your message, tap **Attach** and select one of the following options:

• **Pictures**: allows you to tap an existing image from your Pictures list to add it to your message.
• **Take picture**: allows you to temporarily exit the message, take a photo with phone’s camera, and then add it to your message by tapping **Save**.
• **Videos**: allows you to choose an existing video from the Videos list, then add it to your message.
• **Capture video**: allows you to temporarily exit the message, record a video clip using the phone’s camera, and then add it to your message by tapping **Save**.
• **Audio**: allows you to choose an existing audio file from the Audio list, then add it to your message by tapping the circle to the right of the audio so that it turns green, then tapping **Done**.
• **Calendar**: allows you to add an event from your calendar.
• **Memo**: allows you to add a note from your Memo app. Select an available memo and tap **Done**.
• **Pen memo**: allows you to add a pen memo attachment.
• **Location**: allows you to attach a thumbnail of a map showing your location.

• **Contacts**: allows you to tap on an existing Address Book entry, then add it to your message by tapping **Done**.

### Adding Additional Text

You can copy text such as names, phone numbers, and events from your Contacts, Calendar, or a Memo.

1. While composing a message, tap **Menu ➔ Add text**.

2. At the Add text screen, select one of the following:
   - **Calendar**: allows you to add the name, date, and time of a calendar event to your message.
   - **Location**: allows you to add an address and the link to the location on Google Maps.
   - **Contacts**: allows you to add the name and phone number of any of your contacts to your message.
   - **Memo**: allows you to add an existing memo to your message.
   - **Text templates**: allows you to add pre-defined phrases and sentences. For more information, refer to “**Text Templates**” on page 77.

The information is added to your message.

### Viewing Newly Received Messages

When you receive a message, your phone notifies you by displaying **within the Notification area at the bottom right of your Home screen.**

**To read a message:**

1. Tap **to open the messaging application and select the message.**
   – or –
   From a Home screen, tap **Apps ➔ Messaging** then select the new message to view its contents. The selected message displays on the screen.

2. Tap **to play a multimedia message.**
   • To pause playback of the multimedia message, tap **.**

3. In a single motion, touch and drag up or down the page to scroll through the message (if additional pages were added).
**Message Threads**

Sent and received text and picture messages are grouped into message threads. Threaded messages allow you to see all the messages exchanged (similar to a chat program) and displays a contact on the screen. Message threads are listed in the order in which they were received, with the latest message displayed at the top.

To reply to a text message:

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Messaging.
2. While the message is open, tap the Enter message field and then type your reply message.
3. Compose your reply.
   - **Your texts are colored Blue and your caller’s replies are Yellow.**
4. Tap Send to deliver your reply.
   - or –
   Tap Menu and then select one of the available message options (page 71).

To access message thread options:

- From the main Messaging screen, touch and hold the message to display the following options:
  - **View contact**: displays the Contact’s Overview page.
  - **Add to contact**: begins the process of adding the new number to your Contacts list.
  - **Delete thread**: deletes the currently selected message thread.

To access additional Bubble options:

- Touch and hold the message bubble within an active message conversation to display the following options:
  - **Delete message**: deletes the currently selected message bubble from the thread.
  - **Copy message text**: copies the currently selected message bubble from the thread.
  - **Lock/Unlock message**: locks or unlocks the currently selected message bubble from being accidentally deleted.
  - **Save attachment**: allows you to save the current media file.
  - **Forward**: allows you to forward the currently selected message bubble to an external recipient.
  - **Copy to SIM**: copies the currently selected message bubble as a single text message within the SIM card.
• View message details: displays details for the currently selected message bubble.

Deleting Messages

Deleting a single message thread
1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Messaging.
2. Touch and hold a message from the Messages list, then select Delete thread.
3. At the prompt, tap OK to delete or Cancel to exit.

Deleting multiple message threads
1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Messaging.
2. Tap Menu and then tap Delete threads.
3. Tap each message thread you want to delete. A checkmark displays beside each selected message.
4. Tap Done.
5. At the prompt, tap OK to delete or Cancel to end the process.

Deleting a single message bubble
1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Messaging.
2. Open a message to reveal the message string.
3. Touch and hold a message bubble, then select Delete message.
4. At the prompt, tap OK to delete or Cancel to exit.

Message Search
You can search through your messages by using the Message Search feature.
1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Messaging.
2. Tap Search.
3. Use the on-screen keypad to enter a word or phrase in which to search.
4. All messages that contain the entered search string display.
Messaging Settings

To configure the settings for text messages, multimedia messages, Voice mails, and Push messages.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Messaging.
2. Tap Menu and then tap Settings.

The following Messaging settings are available:

Display

- **Bubble style**: allows you to choose from several bubble styles for your messages. Bubbles are the rounded boxes that surround each message.
- **Background style**: allows you to choose from several background styles for your messages.

Storage settings

- **Delete old messages**: deletes old messages when the limit is reached, rather than overwriting them.
- **Text message limit**: allows you to set a limit on how many text messages are allowed in one conversation.
- **Multimedia message limit**: allows you to set a limit on how many multimedia messages are allowed in one conversation.

Text message (SMS) settings

- **Delivery reports**: when this option is activated, the network informs you whether or not your message was delivered.
- **Manage SIM card messages**: allows you to manage the messages stored on the SIM card.
- **Message center**: allows you to enter the number of your message center where your messages reside while the system is attempting to deliver them.
- **Input mode**: allows you to set the input mode for your text messages. Choose from: GSM Alphabet, Unicode, or Automatic.

Multimedia message (MMS) settings

- **Delivery reports**: when this option is activated, the network informs you whether or not your message was delivered.
- **Read reports**: when this option is activated, your phone receives a request for a read reply along with your message to the recipient.
- **Auto-retrieve**: allows the message system to automatically retrieve messages.
- **Roaming auto-retrieve**: allows the message system to automatically retrieve while roaming.
• **Creation mode**: allows you to select the creation mode: Free, Restricted, or Warning.
  
  — **Restricted**: you can only create and submit messages with content belonging to the Core MM Content Domain.
  
  — **Warning**: the phone will warn you via pop up messages that you are creating a multimedia message which does not fit the Core MM Content Domain.
  
  — **Free**: you may add any content to the message.

**Push message settings**

• **Push messages**: allows you to receive push messages from the network.

• **Service loading**: allows you to set the type of service loading notification. Choose from: Always, Prompt, or Never.

**Cell Broadcast (CB) settings**

• **CB activation**: allows you to activate the ability to receive Cell Broadcast messages.

• **Channel configuration**: allows you to configure the cell broadcast channels.

**Notification settings**

• **Notifications**: allows you to see message notifications on your status bar.

• **Select ringtone**: allows you to set the ringtone for your message notifications.

**Text Templates**

This screen displays your available text message reply templates. This is a readily accessible list of both default and user-defined text snippets that can be used to quickly reply to incoming messages.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Messaging.

2. From the Messaging list, tap Menu ➔ Text templates.

3. Tap a message to immediately insert it into your current message conversation.

To create your own text template:

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Messaging.

2. From the Messaging list, tap Menu ➔ Text templates.

3. Tap [Create text template].

4. Enter a new text string and tap [Save].

Push message settings

Push messages: allows you to receive push messages from the network.

Service loading: allows you to set the type of service loading notification. Choose from: Always, Prompt, or Never.

Cell Broadcast (CB) settings

CB activation: allows you to activate the ability to receive Cell Broadcast messages.

Channel configuration: allows you to configure the cell broadcast channels.

Notification settings

Notifications: allows you to see message notifications on your status bar.
Gmail

Send and receive email with Gmail, Google’s web-based email.

Tip: To set up your Google account on your device, use Accounts and sync settings. For more information, refer to “Accounts and Synchronization” on page 220.

Setting Up Your Gmail Account

If you did not set up a Google account during the initial configuration, the first time you launch Gmail, your device prompts you to set up your Google account.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Gmail.

The Add a Google Account screen displays.

2. Tap Existing to sign in to an existing account.
   • At the Sign in screen, use the on-screen keyboard to enter your Google Email name and Password, then tap Sign in.
   – or –
   Tap New to create a new account.
   • At the Your name screen, enter your first and last name, and tap Next.
   • At the Create email address follow the prompts to create a new account.

The Backup and restore screen displays.

3. Read the backup and restore information, tap the option to enable or disable it, and then tap Next.

4. The device communicates with the Google server to set up your account and synchronize your email. When complete, your Gmail displays in the Inbox.

Refreshing Your Gmail Account

Refresh your account to update your device from the Gmail servers.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Gmail.

The Add a Google Account screen displays.

2. Tap Refresh in the Application Bar.
Managing Your Gmail Account

Use menu options to manage your Gmail account.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Gmail.
2. Tap Menu for these options:
   - Manage labels: Determine settings for each label.
   - Settings: Configure settings. For more information, refer to “Gmail Account Settings” on page 80.
   - Help: Learn about using Gmail.
   - Send feedback: Fill out a Google feedback form.

Managing Your Gmail Conversations

In addition to managing your Gmail account, there are options for changing the status of one or more Gmail conversations in an account.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Gmail.
2. Tap the gray box to the left of one or more conversations and then choose one of the following options:
   - Archive: Archive the conversations. Archived conversations are assigned to the All Mail folder.
   - Delete: Delete the conversations. Deleted conversations are moved to the Trash folder.
   - Change labels: Relocate the conversations to the Inbox, Personal, Receipts, Travel, or Work folder and then tap OK.
   - Mark as Read / Mark as Unread: Mark the conversations as read or unread. Once a conversation is marked as read, it has a gray background. Tap DONE to remove the check marks.

Tip: To move a conversation to another folder, touch and drag it to the folder tab.

3. Tap Menu for these options:
   - Add star / Remove star: Mark (or unmark) conversations with a yellow star. Starred conversations are listed in the Starred folder. Tap Done to remove check marks.
   - Mark important / Mark not important: Change the importance indicator. Yellow indicates important.
   - Mute: New messages added to muted conversations bypass your inbox so that the conversation stays archived in the All Mail folder.
   - Report spam: Report the conversations as spam, which are emails that violate the Gmail Program Policies and/or Terms of Use.
**Composing and Sending Gmail**

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Gmail.
2. Tap Compose.
3. Tap the To field to enter recipients. As you enter names or email addresses, matching contacts display. Select a contact to add it to the field.
4. Tap the Subject field to enter a subject.
5. Tap Compose email to enter the text of your email.
6. While composing a message, the following options are displayed:
   * + CC/BCC: Create Cc (copy) and Bcc (blind copy) fields in the message. After creating the fields, tap to enter recipients.
   * Attach: Launch Gallery to select a photo to add to the message.
7. Tap Menu for the following options:
   * Save draft: Stores the current message as a draft.
   * Discard: Allows you to discard the current message.
   * Settings: Configure settings. For more information, refer to “Gmail Account Settings” on page 80.
   * Help: Learn about using Gmail.
   * Send feedback: Fill out a Google feedback form.
8. Tap SEND to send this message.
   – or –
   Tap SAVE DRAFT to save a draft of this message.

**Gmail Account Settings**

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Gmail.
2. Tap Menu ➔ Settings for settings:
   General settings
   * Confirm before deleting: Have your device prompt you to confirm Delete actions.
   * Confirm before archiving: Have your device prompt you to confirm archiving actions.
   * Confirm before sending: Have your device prompt you to confirm Send actions.
• **Auto-advance**: Choose a screen to show after you delete or archive a conversation.

• **Message text size**: Set the size of text in message displays.

• **Clear search history**: Remove previous searches you performed.

• **Hide pictures in messages**: Pictures found within messages are not automatically shown. You are prompted to view them.

*(Gmail account settings)*

Each account has independent settings:

• **Priority Inbox**: This setting is only available if you have configured Gmail on the web to show Priority Inbox. If available, you can set Priority Inbox as the conversation list to open when you have new mail, rather than Inbox.

• **Email notifications**: When enabled, notifications for new email appear in the Status Bar.

• **Ringtone & vibrate**: If Email notifications is enabled, tap this field to set the following options:
  — **Sync messages**: Sync options are: None, Last 30 days, or All.
  — **Email notifications**: When enabled, notifications for new email appear in the Status Bar.

  — **Ringtone**: Choose a ringtone for new email notifications or use the default ringtone and then tap OK.

  — **Vibrate**: Choose a vibration setting. Choose from Always, Only in silent mode, and Never.

  — **Notify once**: When enabled, a notification appears in the Status Bar for new email, not for every new message.

• **Signature**: Create a text signature to add to outgoing messages.

• **Gmail sync is ON/OFF**: Indicates whether you have Gmail synchronization turned on for this account in the Accounts and sync settings. Tap to open those settings.

• **Days of mail to sync**: Set the number days to sync email for this Gmail account.

• **Manage labels**: Choose which labels are synchronized.

• **Download attachments**: Enable or disable auto-download of files attached to recent messages when connected through Wi-Fi.

**About Gmail**

• Displays information about the Gmail (Version, copyright information, Send feedback, Report a problem, Open source licenses, Privacy Policy).
Email

Use Email to view and manage all your email accounts in one application.

Email (or Internet Email) enables you to review and create email using several email services. You can also receive text message alerts when you receive an important email. Your device’s Email application lets you access and manage multiple email accounts simultaneously in one convenient location.

There are currently three main types of email accounts on your device: Gmail, Internet-based email (Gmail, Yahoo, etc..), and Microsoft Exchange (Corporate email or Outlook®).

To send and receive email messages through an ISP (Internet Service Provider) account, or if you wish to use your device to access your corporate email through a VPN (Virtual Private Network), you will first need to set up an IMAP or POP account.

- **IMAP** (Internet Message Access Protocol) - This protocol is frequently used in large networks and commercial settings. IMAP4 is the current standard.
- **POP3** (Post Office Protocol) - This protocol is supported by most ISPs (Internet service providers) and common among consumer applications. POP3 is the current standard.
- **Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync** - This protocol is frequently used with a large corporate email server system and provides access to email, contact, and calendar synchronization.
Configuring Email Accounts

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Email.
2. At the Set up email screen, enter an Email address and Password, then tap Next.
3. Your account’s incoming server settings are different depending on the kind of email service for the account. If you are asked What type of account?, tap the type of account: POP3 account, IMAP account, or Microsoft Exchange ActiveSync.
   The Server settings screen displays. Enter the required settings and tap Next. For more information, refer to “Incoming Server Settings” on page 90.

---

Important! If your account settings could not obtained automatically, tap Edit details, update the Domain and Exchange server information, an tap Next.

---

4. If prompted, read the Remote security administration popup information and tap OK.
5. Review the Account options screen. Available options vary, depending on the provider:

   - **Peak schedule**: Set how often to check for new email sent to this account during peak times. Options are: Push (Automatic), Manual, every 5 or 15 minutes, or every 1, 4, or 12 hours.

   - **Off-peak schedule**: Set how often to check for new email sent to this account during off-peak times. Options are: Push (Automatic), Manual, every 5 or 15 minutes, or every 1, 4, or 12 hours.

   - **Period to sync Email**: For Exchange ActiveSync accounts, set whether to store All, 1 or 3 days, 1 or 2 weeks, or 1 month of email on the tablet.

   - **Email check frequency**: Set how often to check for new email. Options are: Never, Every 5, 10, 15, or 30 minutes, Every hour, Every 4 hours, or Once a day.

   - **Emails retrieval size**: Set the maximum email retrieval size. Options are: Headers only, 0.5, 1, 2, 5, 10, 20, 50, or 100 KB, or All.

   - **Period to sync Calendar**: Set how much of the calendar for this account to sync with your tablet. Options are: 2 weeks, 1, 3, or 6 months, or All calendar.

   - **Send email from this account by default**: When enabled, email from your device is automatically sent from this account.
• **Notify me when email arrives**: When enabled, you receive notifications when you receive new email sent to this account.

• **Sync email**: When enabled, email from your account is synchronized with your device’s email.

• **Sync Contacts**: When enabled, contacts from your account are synchronized with your device’s Contacts.

• **Sync calendar**: When enabled, events from your account are synchronized with your device’s Calendar.

• **Sync task**: When enabled, tasks from your account are synchronized with your device’s Calendar.

• **Automatically download attachments when connected to Wi-Fi**: Enable or disable auto-download of files attached to recent messages when connected through Wi-Fi.

6. Tap *Next* to go to the next screen or tap *Previous* to go to the Apps screen.

---

**Note:** For Exchange ActiveSync accounts, the Activate device administrator? screen may appear. Read the information and tap *Activate* to continue.

7. Enter an account name for the email account just added, which is displayed on the email screen, and enter Your name, if required.

8. Tap *Done*.

   The device communicates with the appropriate server to set up your account and synchronize your email. When complete, your email appears in the Inbox for the account.

---

**Note:** To configure email account settings at any time, use *Menu ➔ Settings*. Tap the account to display Account settings.

---

### Adding Additional Email Accounts

**To add additional email accounts:**

1. From a Home screen, tap *Apps ➔ Email*.

2. Tap *Menu ➔ Settings ➔ Add account*.

3. Enter the *Email address*, *Password*, and so on.
Managing Your Email Accounts

You can view email you receive for all accounts in the Combined view screen or you can view email accounts individually.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Email.
2. Tap the drop-down menu at the top left of the screen to select:
   - Combined view: View all email in a combined inbox.
   - <Account Name>: View email for the account.

Managing Your Email Conversations

In addition to managing your Email account, there are options for changing the status of one or more Email conversations in an account.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Email.
2. Tap the box to the left of one or more conversations and then choose one of the following options:
   - Star 🌟: Mark the conversations with a gold star and list them in the Starred folder. Tap ✅ to make the changes.
     – or –
   - Flag 🚨: Tap Clear to clear all flags and check marks, tap Complete to mark all conversations with a blue check mark, or tap Set to set all flags. Set flags are gold.
   - Mark as Read / Mark as Unread ☐: Mark the conversations as read or unread. Once a conversation is marked as read, it has a gray background.
   - Move to 📦: Relocate the conversations to another folder in the current email account or in a folder within another email account.
• **Delete** : Delete the conversations.

  – or –

Tap **Menu** for these options:

• **Sort by** : Choose a method for listing your email conversations.

• **View mode** : Choose how to view your email conversations.
  Choices are: Standard view and Conversations view.

• **Create folder** : Create a new main folder or tap an existing
  folder to create a sub-folder.

**Note:** The create folder option is not available for all email
accounts.

• **Settings** : Display the settings for this email account. For more
  information, refer to “**Account Settings**” on page 88.

• **Delete all** : Delete all items for this email account.

---

**Composing and Sending Email**

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps ➔ Email**.

2. Tap an account, if you have more than one account set up, then tap **Compose**.

3. Enter the recipient’s email address in the **To** field.
   • If you are sending the email message to several recipients,
     separate the email addresses with a comma. You can add as
     many message recipients as you want.
   • Tap **+** to add a contact to the field.
   • Tap **+Cc/Bcc** to add additional carbon copy recipients.
     – Use the **Cc** field to carbon copy additional recipients.
     – Use the **Bcc** field to blind copy additional recipients.
   • Tap **+Me** to add yourself as a recipient.

4. Tap the **Subject** field to enter a subject.

5. Tap the body of the email to enter the text of your email.
6. While composing a message, the following options may be displayed:

- **Priority**: Set the email priority. Options are: High, Normal, or Low.
- **Tracking options**: Tap **Read receipt** or **Delivery receipt** and then tap **OK** to set the tracking options for this email.
- **Security options**: Set the email security options. Options are: Encrypt and Sign.
- **Attach**: Choose an attachment to add to the message from the listed apps, such as My Files, Images, Video, Audio, and so on.
- **Undo**: Erase the previous input.
- **Redo**: Restore the previously erased input.
- **Insert**: Choose an item to insert into the message from the listed apps, such as Images, Memo, Contacts, and so on.

**Insert quick response**: Insert text that you frequently use in emails. For more information, refer to “Account Settings” on page 88.

**Font size**: Choose a text font size of 9, 10, 12, 14, 16, 20, 24, 28, or 36 points.

**Bold**: Bold the following text. Tap again to turn off bold.

**Italics**: This action italicizes the subsequent entered text.

**Font color**: Set the color of the text font. The bar changes to the selected color.

**Background color**: Set the color of the background of the email.

7. Tap **Save** to save the email to the Drafts folder, **Send** to send the email, or **Delete** to delete the email.
**Account Settings**

Account settings lets you configure handling of email on your device.

**Note:** Available settings may depend on the email account and include setting how much email to synchronize, creating signatures for email you send, and other handling options.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Email.
2. Tap Menu ➔ Settings, then select General Preferences. The following options display:
   - **Display after deleting message**: Set the screen to show after deleting a message. Choices are: Next message, Previous message, or Message list.
   - **Message preview line**: Choose a message preview line amount. Options are: None or 1, 2, or 3 lines.
   - **Email header**: Set whether the Subject or Sender of the email is shown as the header.
   - **Confirm deletions**: Tap the box to enable or disable this option. A check mark ✅ indicates that deletions must be confirmed.
   - **Quick responses**: Edit text that you frequently use in emails.

**Note:** Some of these settings vary depending on the email account type used.

Tap an email account to display the following settings:

**Common settings**

- **Account name**: Enter a name to identify this account.
- **Your name**: Enter a name to be used on emails.
- **Add signature**: Tap the box to enable or disable this option. A check mark ✅ indicates that the following signature is added to emails.
- **Signature**: Enter a signature to add to email from this account.
- **Default account**: When enabled, email from your device is automatically sent from this account.
- **Always Cc/Bcc myself**: Lets you manage whether your email address is included in the Cc or Bcc lines.
- **Forward with files**: Tap the check box to include any file attachments when you forward an email.
- **Recent messages**: Limit the number of recent messages that are displayed on your device. Options are: 25, 50, 75, 100, 200, or Total.
• **Show images**: Display images in an email.

**Data usage**

• **Sync Email**: Tap the box to enable or disable this option. A check mark 🔄 indicates email sync is enabled.

• **Email check frequency**: Set how often to check for new email sent to this account during. Options are: Never, every 5, 10, 15, or 30 minutes, every hour, every 4 hours, or once a day.

• **Auto download attachments**: Enable or disable auto-download of files attached to recent messages when connected through Wi-Fi.

• **Size to retrieve emails**: Set the maximum email retrieval size, which ranges from 2 KB to 100 KB.

• **Auto resend times**: Set the number of times the outgoing is automatically sent if there are any issues detected. Options are: No limit or 1, 3, 5, or 10 times.

**Exchange ActiveSync settings**

• **Period to sync email**: Set whether to store All, 1 or 3 days, 1 or 2 weeks, or 1 month of email on the tablet.

• **Empty server trash**: If available, indicates whether to delete the contents in the server trash.

• **Sync schedule**: Set up your peak and off-peak schedule controls, which determines when your tablet checks the email service for new email.

• **Out of office settings**: Lets you set how email is handled for a defined period of time, while you are unable to check your email.

• **Size to retrieve emails**: Set the maximum email retrieval size, which ranges from 0.5 KB to 100 KB or allow All email to be retrieved.

• **Period to sync Calendar**: When enabled, events from your account are synchronized with your device’s Calendar.

• **Security options**: Set various security options for the account.

• **In case of Sync Conflict**: Set whether to update the server or your tablet if there is a conflict of information between them.

• **Auto resend times**: Set the number of auto send times. Options are: No limit or 1, 3, 5, or 10 times.

**Notification settings**

• **Email notifications**: When enabled, the New Email icon appears in the Status Bar when a new email arrives.

• **Select ringtone**: Choose a ringtone for email notifications for this account.
• **Vibrate**: When enabled, email notifications for this account are accompanied by vibration.

**Server settings**

• **Exchange server settings**: Configure incoming server settings.

  – or –

  **Incoming settings**: Configure incoming server settings. For more information, refer to “Incoming Server Settings” on page 90.

• **Outgoing settings**: Configure outgoing server settings. For more information, refer to “Outgoing Server Settings” on page 91.

• **Sync email**: When enabled, email from your account is synchronized with your device’s email.

• **Sync Contacts**: When enabled, contacts from your account are synchronized with your device’s Contacts.

• **Sync calendar**: When enabled, events from your account are synchronized with your device’s Calendar.

• **Sync task**: When enabled, tasks from your account are synchronized with your device’s tasks.

**Incoming Server Settings**

Your account’s exchange or incoming server settings are different, depending on the kind of email service for the account: POP3, IMAP, or Exchange ActiveSync.

• **Domain\ user name**: If your Exchange ActiveSync server requires that you specify a domain, enter it before the backslash. Otherwise, just enter your username (the part before @emailprovider.com in your email address) after the backslash. The backslash is optional when only entering your username. The Email app enters the correct syntax for domains and usernames when communicating with the server.

• **Password**: The password for your email account, which should be filled in.

• **Exchange server / IMAP server**: The fully resolved domain name of your email service provider’s server, for example, mail.emailprovider.com.

• **Use secure connection (SSL) / Security type**: Check this option if your server requires you to connect to the server securely, or if you prefer to connect securely.
• **Use client certificate:** Use a client certificate for messaging security.

• **Port:** Set the Security type first to enter the typical server port number in this field automatically. Or enter a different port number if your email service provider requires it.

• **IMAP path prefix:** Enter an IMAP path prefix, if required.

**Outgoing Server Settings**

If you use an IMAP or POP3 account for receiving email, you typically use an SMTP server to send email from that account. Exchange ActiveSync accounts do not have separate outgoing server settings.

• **SMTP server:** The fully resolved domain name of your email service provider’s SMTP server, for example, smtp.emprovider.com.

• **Security type:** Select the security type required by your email service provider. Select the **SSL (Accept all certificates)** option for your security type to accept a server certificate from your SMTP server that is self-signed, out-of-date, or in some other way not accepted by the Email application.

• **Port:** Set the Security type first to enter the typical server port number in this field automatically. Or enter a different port number if your email service provider requires it.

• **Require sign-in:** Check this option to enter a username and password for your SMTP server, if your email service provider requires that you enter them to send email.

• **User name:** Your username on the SMTP server (this may not be the same as your username on the POP3 or IMAP server for incoming mail). Visible only if Require sign-in is checked.

• **Password:** Your password on the SMTP server (this may not be the same as your username on the POP3 or IMAP server for incoming mail). Visible only if Require sign-in is checked.

**Google Talk**

Talk is Google’s instant messaging and audio and video chat service. You can use it to communicate, in real time, with other people who also use Google Talk on another Android tablet or phone or on a computer.

**Tip:** Talk requires that you have a Google account. To set up your Google account on your device use **Accounts and sync** settings. For more information, refer to “**Accounts and Synchronization**” on page 220.
**Open Talk and Sign In**

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Talk.
   If you are not signed in to a Google account, the Add a Google Account screen displays.

2. Tap Existing, if you already have a Google account, or New to create a Google account.
   For more information, refer to “Setting Up Your Gmail Account” on page 78.

**Note:** If you have already set up your Google account, you are automatically logged in. Just tap the account.

Once sign in is complete, the Talk main screen displays.

**Invite a Friend to Chat**

You can invite anyone with a Google Account to become your friend in Google Talk, so you can chat with each other and view each other’s online status.

1. While viewing your Friends list, tap Add friend.
2. Enter your friend’s address and tap DONE.

Your friend’s address in Talk is a Gmail or other email address that is configured to connect to Google Talk.

If your friend accepts your invitation, they are added to your Friends list in Talk and you can share each others status in Talk and other applications.

**View and Accept an Invitation to Become a Friend**

When a contact invites you to become a friend in Google Talk, you receive a notification in the System Bar and the invitation displays in your Friends list.

- Tap the invitation and select Accept, if you want to accept the invitation and chat, Decline, if you do not want to chat with and share your Google Talk status with the sender right now, or Block, if you do not want to receive any more invitations from that person.

If you tap Accept, the friend is added to your Friends list in Talk and you can share your status in Talk and other applications.
Talk Options While Chatting

There are several options that are available while viewing your Friends list and some that are only available while you are chatting.

1. Tap 🗿 to search your Talk messages or the current message for a word. Use the on-screen keyboard to enter a search term.

2. Tap 🍀 to invite another friend to chat, 🎥 to invite a friend to video chat, or 🕵️ to invite a friend to voice chat.

3. Select a Friend’s entry to display the Chat entries for that Friend.

4. Tap 📄 Menu to display the following options, which are available while viewing your Friends list and some that are only available while you are chatting.
   - **Display options**: To set the way your friends list is sorted, tap Availability, Name, or Recency.
   - **End all chats**: End all chats in which you are engaged.
   - **Sign out**: Sign out of Google Talk and display the Talk main screen.
   - **End chat**: End this chat session.

   - **Go off the record/Stop chatting off the record**: Set whether you want to stop saving your chat to the chat history.
   - **Friend info**: Display information about the friend with which you are chatting. The following options are also displayed:
     - **BLOCK**: Keeps this person from sending you messages and removes the person from your Friends list.
     - **REMOVE**: Remove the friend as if you never accepted their invitation. However, the friend is not blocked.

   **Note**: If you tap the REMOVE option, tap 🍀 Add friend ➔ Send chat invitation to, to make the Friend visible again.

   - **Add to chat**: Choose another friend to invite to this conversation.
   - **Clear chat history**: Remove the history of this chat from your device.
   - **Settings**: Offers various settings for Google talk. For more information, refer to “Google Talk Settings” on page 94.
   - **Help**: Displays additional help information.
   - **Send feedback**: Fill out a Google feedback form.
Google Talk Settings

Use Google Talk Settings to configure your Talk account. If you have more than one account, each maintains its own Talk settings.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Talk.
2. Tap Menu ➔ Settings, then select an account for options:

   GENERAL
   - Mobile indicator: Check and your friends see an outline of an android next to your name in their Friends list when you are signed into Google Talk on a tablet or phone.
   - Away when screen off: Check to change your Talk status to Away when your screen turns off. When unchecked, your status is not changed.
   - Invitation notifications: Show notification when a friend invitation arrives.

CHAT NOTIFICATIONS
- IM notifications: Set whether to open a dialog, display a notification in the System Bar, or neither, when you receive a text chat.
- Notification ringtone: Set a ringtone to sound, or silent, when you receive a text chat.
- Vibrate: Set how vibrate functions. Choices are: Always, Only when silent, or Never.

VOICE & VIDEO CHAT
- Video chat notifications: Set whether to open a dialog or display a notification in the System Bar when you are invited to a video chat.
- Video chat ringtone: Set a ringtone to sound, or silent, when you receive an invitation to a video chat.
- Vibrate: Set how vibrate functions. Choices are: Always, Only when silent, or Never.
- Default video effect: Set the video image stabilization.
ACCOUNT

- **Blocked friends**: Displays a list of friends you have blocked. Tap a blocked friend and then tap OK to unblock the friend.

- **Clear search history**: Erases your search history. No previous searches are shown until you search for new words.

- **Manage account**: Opens the Accounts and sync settings. For more information, refer to “Accounts and Synchronization” on page 220.

ABOUT

- **Terms & privacy**: Displays the Google Talk terms of use and privacy policies.

---

**Messenger**

With Google Messenger, you can bring groups of friends together into a simple group conversation, putting everyone on the same page. When you get a new conversation in Messenger, Google+ sends an update to your device.

To get started, tap the Messenger icon on the home screen of the Google+ app or use the Messenger icon on your Applications screen.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Messenger.
   
   The Messenger screen displays.

2. Tap **Learn more** in the center of the screen and then tap a topic to learn more about using Google Messenger.
Section 6: Multimedia

This section explains how to use the multimedia features of your device, including the Camera/Camcorder, Music Player, and how to manage your photos, images and sounds.

You can take photographs and shoot video by using the built-in camera functionality. Your camera produces photos in JPEG format.

Important! Do not take photos of people without their permission. Do not take photos in places where cameras are not allowed. Do not take photos in places where you may interfere with another person’s privacy.

Camera

Use your device’s built-in camera and camcorder to take photos and record videos.

- From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Camera. The Camera screen displays.

Taking Photos

Taking pictures with your device’s built-in camera is as simple as choosing a subject, pointing the camera, then pressing the camera key.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Camera.
2. Using the display as a viewfinder, compose your photo by aiming the lens at the subject. To configure settings, see “Camera Settings” on page 99.

3. To take the photo, tap \( \text{(Camera key)} \) until the shutter sounds. (The picture is automatically stored within your designated storage location.

4. Tap \( \text{Back} \) to leave the Camera and display the previous screen.

**Important!** Do not take photos of people without their permission.
Do not take photos in places where cameras are not allowed.
Do not take photos in places where you may interfere with another person’s privacy.

---

**Camera Options**

Before you start taking photos, use the camera options to configure the camera for best results. Camera options are represented by icons on the left side of the screen. While in Camera mode, tap the following icons to set camera options:

- **Flash**: Choose a flash mode from Auto flash, On, or Off, which is the default.
- **Self shot**: Tap to switch to the front-facing camera lens and take a photo of yourself.
- **Shooting mode**: Choose an automatic shooting mode, from:
  - **Single shot**: Take a single photo.
  - **Smile shot**: Tap the Camera button to automatically focus on the subject’s face and take the photo.
  - **Panorama**: Tap the Camera button to take a photo, then use the on-screen guideline to move the viewfinder and take the next 7 shots automatically.
  - **Action shot**: Detects action and creates a panorama of the moving object.
**Timer**: Set a timer for how long to wait before taking a photo. Options are: Off, 2 sec, 5 sec, and 10 sec.

**Exposure value**: Use the slider to set the exposure value from -2.0 to +2.0.

**Settings**:
- **Edit shortcuts**: Allows you to replace the position of the main camera shortcuts with other features or functions.
- **Self-portrait**: Tap to switch to the front-facing camera lens and take a photo of yourself.
- **Flash**: Set the activity state for the flash.
- **Shooting mode**: Set the shooting mode.
- **Scene mode**: Choose an automatic scene mode from None, Landscape, Night, Sports, Party/Indoor, Sunset, Dawn, Text, or Candlelight.
- **Exposure value**: Set the brightness of the photo.

**Settings (Continued)**:
- **Focus mode**: Set the focus mode to Auto focus or Macro.
- **Timer**: Set a timer for how long to wait before taking a photo. Options are: Off, 2 sec, 5 sec, and 10 sec.
- **Effects**: Apply an effect to photos. Options are: None, Black and White, Sepia, or Negative.
- **Resolution**: Set a size for the image. Options are: 3.2M (2048x1536) or 0.8M (1024x768).
- **White balance**: Set the light source. Options are: Auto, Daylight, Incandescent, Fluorescent, or Cloudy.
- **Metering**: Set how the camera measures or meters the light source: Matrix, Center-weighted, or Spot.
- **Outdoor visibility**: When taking outdoor shots in bright settings, enabling Outdoor visibility illuminates your screen to make it easier to see what you are shooting.
Camera Settings

Before you start taking photos, use the camera settings to configure the camera for best results. Camera settings are represented by icons on the left side of the screen.

Editing Camera Settings Shortcuts

The first five icons are actually shortcuts to camera settings. These five shortcuts can be customized to fit your preference.

- Flash,
- Self-portrait,
- Shooting mode,
- Timer, and
- Exposure value

are default settings shortcuts.

To customize these shortcuts:

1. Tap Settings → Edit shortcuts.
   - or -
   Touch and hold any of the shortcut icons to edit them.
2. Touch and hold a setting, then drag and drop it on one of the five settings shortcuts to the left. The replaced setting shortcut displays in the edit list.

**Viewing Photos with the Image Viewer**

After taking a photo, use the Image Viewer to view, share, delete, or edit photos.

1. Tap the **Image Viewer** to view the photo.
2. Tap the screen to show or hide Image Viewer options.
3. With the image active, tap the screen with two fingers or double-tap on the screen to zoom all the way in or out. For more information, refer to “**Pinch**” on page 29.
4. Sweep across the screen to display the next or previous photo. The current photo is outlined in the thumbnails at the bottom of the screen. Tap a thumbnail to view the photo it represents.
5. Tap **Select device** to use AllShare to stream photos to another device. For more information, refer to “**AllShare**” on page 158.

6. Tap **Share via** to use AllShare, Dropbox, Wi-Fi Direct, Picasa, Messaging, Photo editor, Google+, Bluetooth, Social Hub, Email, or Gmail to share the photo.
7. To delete the photo being displayed, tap **Delete ➔ OK** to delete the photo or **Cancel** to exit.
8. Tap **Slideshow** to display a slide show of the available pictures and videos.
9. Tap **Menu** to select **Set picture as** to assign the photo as a Contact photo, Home and lock screens, Home screen wallpaper, or Lock screen wallpaper. For more information, refer to “**Viewing Photos and Videos**” on page 111. Additional functions include:
   - **Copy to clipboard**: Copies the current image to your device's clipboard.
   - **Crop**: Allows you to crop the image. Tap and drag the crop box or the sides or corners of the crop box to create the crop area, then tap **Ok**. Tap **X** to stop without cropping the picture.
   - **Rotate left**: Allows you to rotate the picture counterclockwise 90 degrees.
• **Rotate right**: Allows you to rotate the picture clockwise 90 degrees.
• **Print**: Print the current photo to a compatible Samsung printer.
• **Edit**: Launches the Photo Editor with the current image selected.
• **Motion**: Display Motion activation settings.
• **Show on map**: This option displays if a Location exists for the photo. A Location is added to the photo if GPS tag is set On in the Camera settings. Tap this option to open the Map app and display the Location where the photo was taken. For more information, refer to “Camera Settings” on page 99.
• **Rename**: Changes the filename associated to the current image.
• **Details**: Displays the file information such as Title, Time, etc...

**Note:** Photos are stored in the /Root/DCIM/Camera folder as jpg files. For more information, refer to “Files” on page 167.

10. Tap **Back** to return to the Camera to take more photos.

### Assigning an Image as a Contact Icon
1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Gallery.
2. Select a folder location and tap a file to open it.
3. With the image displayed, tap Menu ➔ Set picture as ➔ Contact photo.
4. Tap a contact to make a selection.
5. Crop the image and tap **Done**.

### Assigning an Image as a Wallpaper
1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Gallery.
2. Select a folder location and tap a file to open it.
3. With the image displayed, tap Menu ➔ Set picture as.
4. Select one of the three options:
   - **Home and lock screens wallpaper** assigns the current image as both the home screen and lock screen backgrounds. This image is spread across all available screens.
   - **Home screen wallpaper** assigns the current image to the home screen background. This image is spread across all available screens.
   - **Lock screen wallpaper** assigns the selected image to the background for the lock screen.
5. Touch and drag the crop box anywhere on the picture. Touch and drag the sides of the crop box to zoom in or out to create a cropped area.

6. Tap **Done** to assign the wallpaper image.
   – or –
   Tap **X** to stop without updating the wallpaper image.

**Camcorder**

Use your device’s built-in Camcorder to record high-definition video.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps ➔ Camera**.
2. Slide the **Mode** button to the **Camcorder** setting. The Camcorder screen displays.
Recording Videos

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Camera.
2. Slide the Mode button to the Camcorder setting.
3. Using the display as a viewfinder, compose your shot by aiming the lens at the subject. For more information, refer to “Camcorder Settings” on page 103.
4. To start recording, tap Record. During recording, the Record button flashes.
5. Tap Record to stop recording.
6. Tap Back to leave the Camcorder and display the previous screen.

Important! Do not take videos of people without their permission.
Do not take videos in places where cameras are not allowed.
Do not take videos in places where you may interfere with another person's privacy.

Camcorder Settings

Before you start taking videos, use the camcorder settings to configure the camcorder for best results. Camcorder settings are represented by icons on the left side of the screen.

Editing Camcorder Settings Shortcuts

As with the camera, the first five icons are actually shortcuts to camcorder settings and recording lengths (Normal, Limit for MMS, and Limit for email). These five shortcuts can be customized to fit your preference.

Flash, Self-recording, Recording mode, Timer, and Exposure value are default settings shortcuts.

To customize these shortcuts, see “Editing Camera Settings Shortcuts” on page 99.

Camcorder Options

Before you start recording videos, use the camcorder options to configure the camcorder for best results. Camcorder options are represented by icons on the left side of the screen. While in Camcorder mode, tap the following icons to set camcorder options:

Flash: Tap Off or On.
Configuring Camcorder Settings

To configure Camcorder settings:

- While in Camcorder mode, tap a settings shortcut or tap `Settings` to configure the following Camcorder settings:
  - **Edit shortcuts**: Customize your settings shortcuts. For more information, refer to “Editing Camera Settings Shortcuts” on page 99.
  - **Self-recording**: Tap to switch to the front-facing camera lens and record a video of yourself.
  - **Flash**: Select Off or On to disable or enable the flash.
  - **Recording mode**: Set a recording mode. Options are: Normal, Limit for MMS, and Limit for email, which limits the size of the video to 50 megabytes.

**Self shot**: Tap to switch to the front-facing camera lens and record a video of yourself.

**Recording mode**: allows you to set the recording mode to: Normal, which is limited only by available space on the destination location, Limit for MMS, which is limited by MMS size restrictions, and Limit for email which restricts the file size so it can easily be attached to a new outgoing email.

**Timer**: Set a timer for how long to wait before recording a video. Options are: Off, 2 sec, 5 sec, and 10 sec.

**Exposure value**: Set the brightness of the video.

**Camera / Camcorder Mode**: allows you to take a photo in various modes. Once you change the mode, the corresponding indicator appears at the top left of the display. Slide the button up for Camera, or down for Camcorder.

**Camcorder button**: shoots or stops video recording when tapped in Camcorder mode.

**Image viewer**: allows you to access the Image viewer and the various viewing options for a selected video. The last video you shot, will be displayed as a thumbnail in the Image viewer icon.

**Configuring Camcorder Settings**

To configure Camcorder settings:

- While in Camcorder mode, tap a settings shortcut or tap `Settings` to configure the following Camcorder settings:
  - **Edit shortcuts**: Customize your settings shortcuts. For more information, refer to “Editing Camera Settings Shortcuts” on page 99.
  - **Self-recording**: Tap to switch to the front-facing camera lens and record a video of yourself.
  - **Flash**: Select Off or On to disable or enable the flash.
  - **Recording mode**: Set a recording mode. Options are: Normal, Limit for MMS, and Limit for email, which limits the size of the video to 50 megabytes.
• **Exposure value**: Use the slider to set the exposure value from -2.0 to +2.0.

• **Timer**: Set a timer for how long to wait before recording a video. Options are: Off, 2 sec, 5 sec, and 10 sec.

• **Effects**: Apply an effect to videos. Options are: None, Negative, Black and white, or Sepia.

• **Resolution**: Set a size for the video. Options are: 1280x720 or 640x480.

• **White balance**: Set the light source. Options are: Auto, Daylight, Cloudy, Incandescent, or Fluorescent.

• **Outdoor visibility**: When recording outdoors in bright settings, enabling Outdoor visibility Illuminates your screen to make it easier to see what you are recording.

---

**Note:** What you see on screen will not correspond to the luminance of the actual video taken.

• **Guidelines**: Enable or disable an on-screen grid to aid in video composition.

• **Reset**: Set all Camera settings to the defaults.

---

**Viewing Videos with the Image Viewer**

After recording a video, use the Image Viewer to play, share, or delete your video.

1. Tap the **Image Viewer** to view the video.

2. Tap the screen to show or hide Image Viewer options.

3. Sweep across the screen to display the next or previous video. The current video is outlined in the thumbnails at the bottom of the screen. Tap a thumbnail to view the video it represents.

4. Tap **Select device** to use AllShare to stream videos to another device. For more information, refer to “**AllShare**” on page 158.

5. Tap **Share via** to use AllShare, Dropbox, Wi-Fi Direct, Messaging, Google+, Bluetooth, Social Hub, YouTube, Email, or Gmail to share the video.

6. To delete the video being displayed, tap **Delete ➔ OK** to delete the video or **Cancel** to exit.

7. Tap **Slideshow** to display a slide show of the available pictures and videos.
Note: Videos are stored in the /Root/DCIM/Camera folder as mp4 files. For more information, refer to “Files” on page 167.

8. To play a video, tap Play. Tap Pause to pause the video and tap Resume to resume playing the video.
9. Tap SoundAlive to set the sound quality to Normal, Voice, Movie, or 5.1 ch.
10. Touch and drag the white dot on the progress bar to fast forward or rewind the video. Tap the left end of the progress bar to restart the video. Tap the right end of the progress bar to end the video playback. – or – Tap Rewind to restart the video or Fast Forward to end the video.
11. Tap Back to return to the Camcorder.

Video Player

Your device’s large LCD screen provides playback of videos. Use Video to view and manage videos stored on your tablet. This device is able to playback DivX videos.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Video player.
2. Tap the Thumbnails, List, or Folders tab.
3. Tap Search and use the keyboard to enter a search term. The current folder is searched and results are displayed. Tap X to remove the search field.
4. While viewing the list, tap Menu for options:
   - List by: Display videos by Name (default), Date, Size, or Type.
   - Share via: Share the video with Dropbox, Wi-Fi Direct, Messaging, Google+, Bluetooth, YouTube, Email, or Gmail.
   - Delete: Tap videos to select them for deletion or tap Select all to delete all videos. Tap Delete to deleted the selected videos.
   - Auto play next: Tap to enable or disable automatic playing of videos in the order they appear.
5. Tap a video to play it. While playing a video, tap the screen to display or hide on-screen playback controls.
6. Tap the icon in the upper left corner of the display screen while the video is playing to change the Display Mode from original size to full screen in ratio or full screen.
   • **Original Size** ( ): Changes the display mode to the original size.
   • **Full-Screen in Ratio View** ( ): Changes the display mode to the full-screen in ratio option. The video is enlarged as much as possible without becoming distorted.
   • **Full-Screen View** ( ): Changes the display mode to full screen. That is, the entire screen is used, which may cause some minor distortion.

7. Tap [SoundAlive] to set the sound quality to Normal, Voice, Movie, or 5.1 ch.

8. Tap [Select device] to use AllShare to stream videos to another device. For more information, refer to “AllShare” on page 158.

9. While the video is playing, tap [Bookmark] to mark your favorite areas of the video. A yellow mark displays on the progress bar.

10. During playback, tap [Menu] for options:
    • **Share via**: Send the video by Dropbox, Wi-Fi Direct, Messaging, Google+, Bluetooth, Social Hub, YouTube, Email, or Gmail.
    • **Trim**: Trim the original video or trim the video and create a new video.
    • **Via Bluetooth**: Turn Bluetooth on to use Bluetooth services.
    • **Bookmarks**: If bookmarks have been set for this video, a thumbnail and time are displayed for each bookmark. Tap [ ] to remove a bookmark.
    • **Settings**: Tap this option to view the following:
        — **Play speed**: Touch and drag the slider to decrease or increase play speed.
        — **Subtitles**: View subtitles for the video, if available.
        — **Auto play next**: Enable or disable auto play of the next video.
        — **Color tone**: Set the color tone to Normal, Warm, or Cold.
        — **Outdoor visibility**: Turn outdoor visibility On or Off.
    • **Details**: Provides details about the video, such as Name, Size, Resolution, Duration, Format, and Date modified.

For more information, refer to “Playing Videos” on page 113.
**DivX Overview**

This device is able to playback DivX videos. DivX Certified to play DivX video up to HD 1080p, including premium content. If you try to play DivX VOD content not authorized for your device, the message “Authorization Error” will be displayed and your content will not play.] Learn more at [www.divx.com/vod](http://www.divx.com/vod).

Your device must first be registered to playback protected or purchased DivX content. DRM-free or unprotected content does not required DivX VOD registration.

**Locating Your VOD Registration Number**

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps ➔ Settings ➔ About device ➔ Legal Information ➔ License settings ➔ DivX® VOD > Register.**
2. Write down your Registration code.
3. Tap OK.

**Register Your DivX Device for VOD Playback of Purchased Movies**

To play purchased DivX movies on your device, you will first need to complete a one-time registration using both your device and your computer.

1. Write down the DivX registration code that appears on-screen. Copy this 8 or 10-digit number down.
2. Verify you have the latest DivX software running on your computer. Download the free player (for your computer) from [www.divx.com](http://www.divx.com).
3. Open the DivX Player on your computer and from within the VOD menu, select **Register a DivX Certified Device...**
4. You are prompted to log in or create a DivX account if your account information has not already been saved in DivX Player.
5. Follow the instructions in DivX Player to enter the registration code from step 2 and create a device nickname (ex: “Pat or Pat’s Device”).

6. Select a location on your computer to download the DivX registration video with the same title as your device nickname (ex: Pat.divx).

7. Follow the on-screen instructions to download the file and initiate the transfer process. You will need to place this video file onto your device and play it back.

8. Connect your device to the computer via USB and transfer this video.

9. From the **Registration** screen (Transfer), click **Transfer Video now** and select the location of the internal storage or **USB** (the device) as the target destination for the registration video (created in step 6) and click **Start**. 
   – or – 
   Locate the created file, copy and paste it into the new drive letter corresponding to your device’s storage location.

10. From a Home screen, tap **Apps ➔ Files**.

11. Locate your registration DivX video file and tap the file to play it. Once you play the registration file on your device, your registration is complete.

12. Return to the DivX VOD Manager screen (from within your computer’s DivX Player) and confirm both your computer and your new device appears in the list of registered DivX devices.

---

**Important!** There is no special registration or configuration necessary to playback DRM-free DivX movies. Registration of your device is only required for playback of protected DivX material.
Gallery

Your large LCD screen provides high-resolution display of photos and videos. Use the Gallery to view, capture, and manage photos and videos.

Selecting Photos and Videos to View

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Gallery. All albums display.
2. Tap Albums to display other ways to group your photos and videos. Options are:
   • Albums: Based on the folder in which they are stored.
   • Locations: Based on where taken.
   • Time: Based on the time taken.
   • Tags: Based on tags applied.
3. Tap Camera to launch the Camera app.
4. Tap Menu to display the following options:
   • Select album / Select group: Tap one or more albums or groups that you want to share, stream to another device, or delete.

   • Make available offline: In addition to playing the videos that you add to your online library, you can play videos stored on your device’s internal storage. Then you can view videos when you have no Internet connection. To do this, make some of your online videos available offline.

   Note: Making videos available offline is very similar to making music available offline. For more information, refer to “Making Online Music Available Offline” on page 127.

Viewing Groups of Photos and Videos

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Gallery.
2. Tap a category and then a group to view it. Thumbnails for each photo and video in the group display.
3. Tap Slideshow to view a slideshow of the available pictures and videos.
4. Tap Menu for these options:
   • Select item: Tap one or more items that you want to share, stream to another device, or delete.
   • Group by: Further group this group by Location, Time, or Tags, depending on the way you chose the group.
Viewing Photos and Videos

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Gallery.
2. Select a category and then a group to view it, and then tap a photo or video thumbnail.
3. Tap the screen to show or hide Gallery options.
4. Tap the screen with two fingers or double-tap on the screen to zoom all the way in or out. For more information, refer to “Pinch” on page 29.
5. Sweep across the screen to display the next or previous photo or video. (Videos are indicated by the Play button.) The current photo or video is outlined in the thumbnails at the bottom of the screen. Tap a thumbnail to view the photo or video it represents.
6. Tap Select device to use AllShare to stream photos or videos to another device. For more information, refer to “AllShare” on page 158.
7. Tap Share to use AllShare, Dropbox, Wi-Fi Direct, Messaging, Picasa (photos), Photo editor (photos), Google+, Bluetooth, Social Hub, YouTube (videos), Email, or Gmail to share the photo or video.
8. Tap Delete to delete the photo or video being displayed. Tap OK to delete the photo or video or Cancel to exit.
9. Tap Slideshow to view a slideshow of photos and video thumbnails in the category. Tap the screen to stop the slideshow and view the photo or video being displayed.
10. Tap Menu to display the following options for photos:
   - Copy to clipboard: Copy the current photo to the clipboard.
   - Crop: Allows you to crop the image. Touch and drag the crop box or the sides or corners of the crop box to create the crop area, then tap Done. Select X to stop without cropping the photo.
   - Rotate left: Allows you to rotate the photo counterclockwise 90 degrees.
   - Rotate right: Allows you to rotate the photo clockwise 90 degrees.
   - Set picture as: Assign the photo as a Contact photo, Home and lock screens, Home screen wallpaper, Lock screen wallpaper.
• **Print:** Print the current photo to a Samsung printer.

• **Edit:** Use Photo editor or Photo studio to edit photos.

• **Motion:** Display the Motion settings. For more information, refer to “Motion” on page 237.

• **Show on map:** This option displays if a Location exists for the photo. A Location is added to the photo if **GPS tag** is set **On** in the Camera settings. Tap this option to open the Map app and display the Location where the photo was taken. For more information, refer to “Camera Settings” on page 99.

---

**Caution!** Be aware that your location may be present on a photo when posting your photos on the internet.

---

• **Rename:** Enter a new file name.

• **Details:** Provides details about the photo such as Title, Time, Location, Width, Height, File Size, and so on. Tap **Close** to close the pop-up.

---

**Note:** Photos are stored in the /Root/DCIM/Camera folder as jpg files. For more information, refer to “Files” on page 167.

---

There is only two options for videos that are not playing:

• **Rename:** Enter a new file name.

• **Details:** Provides details about the video such as Title, Time, Duration, File Size, and so on. Tap **Close** to close the pop-up.

For menu options while a video is playing and other video options, see “Video Player” on page 106.

---

**Note:** Videos are stored in the /Root/DCIM/Camera folder as mp4 files. For more information, refer to “Files” on page 167.

---

11. Tap ↪ **Back** to return to the category screen.
Setting a Picture As

You can use the photos you take as a contact’s photo or as wallpaper for the Home or Lock screen:

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Gallery.
2. Select a category and then a group to view it, and then tap a photo to select it.
3. Tap Menu ➔ Set picture as.
4. Tap Contact photo and then tap a contact entry.
   – or –
   Tap Home and lock screens, Home screen wallpaper, or Lock screen wallpaper.
   The Crop picture screen displays.
5. Touch and drag the crop box or the sides or corners of the crop box to create the crop area, then tap Done to save the cropped photo as the contact’s icon or wallpaper. Tap Cancel to stop without cropping the photo.

Tip: To remove a contact photo, see “Updating Contacts” on page 62.

Playing Videos

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Gallery.
2. Select a category and then a group to view it, and then tap a video thumbnail to play the video.

Note: Videos are marked with a Play button.

3. Tap Pause to pause the video.
4. Tap Resume to resume playing the video.
5. Touch and drag the white dot on the progress bar to fast forward or rewind the video. Tap the left end of the progress bar to restart the video. Tap the right end of the progress bar to end the video playback.
   – or –
   Tap Rewind to restart the video or Fast Forward to end the video.
**Sharing Photos and Videos**

To share photos and videos with your friends:

1. From a Home screen, tap ☰️ Apps ➔ 📷 Gallery.
2. Select a category and then a group to display thumbnails.
3. Tap  Menu ➔ Select item.
4. Select one or more photos and videos to highlight them for sharing.
5. Tap  Share.
6. Tap Deselect all in the Selected drop-down to unhighlight photos and videos.
7. Tap AllShare, Dropbox, Wi-Fi Direct, Picasa (photos only), Messaging, Photo editor (photos only), Google+, Bluetooth, Social Hub, YouTube (videos only), Email, or Gmail then follow the prompts.

**Photo Editor**

The Photo editor application provides basic editing functions for photos that you take on your device. Along with basic image tuning like brightness, contrast, and color, it also provides a wide variety of effects used for editing the photo.

1. From a Home screen, tap ☰️ Apps ➔ 📷 Photo editor.
2. Tap Select picture to edit a picture in your Gallery.
   - or –
   Tap Take a picture to take a picture with the camera.
3. Tap the picture and it is loaded into the Photo editor.
4. Use the following Photo editor controls to edit your photo:

   - **Selection:** Tap the selection icon and then tap Magnetic, Lasso, Brush, Round, or Square to set how to mark an area for cropping, rotating, and so on.
   - Tap  to select a single area,  to add to a selected area, or  to remove part of a selected area.
5. When all updates to the photo have been made, tap **Save**. Use the keyboard to name the edited photo and tap **OK** to save it.

6. While editing a photo, tap **Menu** to display the following options:
   - **Select picture**: Open a new photo for editing.
   - **Take picture**: Open the Camera and take a new photo.
   - **Share via**: Send photos to another device or another person. Options are: AllShare, Bluetooth, Dropbox, Email, Gmail, Google+, Messaging, Picasa, Social Hub, or Wi-Fi Direct.
   - **Set as**: Use this photo as a **Contact photo**, a **Home and lock screens**, **Home screen wallpaper**, or **Lock screen wallpaper** image.

**Selection Size**: Set the size of the Grab selection area. Drag the slider from small to large.

**Inverse**: Select the entire picture except for the selected area.

**Undo**: Remove the last change.

**Redo**: Restore a removed change.

**Rotate**: Rotate a photo to the left or to the right or create a mirror image of the photo.

**Resize**: Touch and then drag the corners of the photo to resize it.

**Crop**: Tap to crop (cut-out) an area of a photo.

**Color**: Set the **Auto adjustment**, **Exposure**, **Saturation**, **Contrast**, **Brightness**, and **Hue** of a photo. You can also make it **Grey-scale** or add a **Temperature** effect.

**Effects**: Add various effects to your photo, such as **Blur**, **Motion**, **Distortion**, **Filter**, or **Frames**.

**Tools**: Copy and Paste to another image or to the original image. You can use the Spot healing option.
Media Hub

Samsung Media Hub is your one stop for the hottest movie and TV content. With hundreds of titles available at your fingertips, entertaining on the go has never been easier. You can rent or purchase your favorite content and conveniently watch anywhere. Featuring the stunning viewing quality Samsung is known for, Samsung Media Hub is your gateway to mobile video like you have never experienced it before.

Tip: A shortcut to Media Hub appears on the main Home screen by default.

Note: Media Hub service requires a Samsung account and depends on service availability.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Media Hub.
2. Read the End-User License Agreement (EULA), tap I agree to the Terms and Conditions, and then select Accept to continue or Decline to exit.

The Media Hub screen displays.

3. To rent or buy media, you must have a Samsung account. Tap Menu ➔ My Profile to sign in to your Samsung account or to create an account. Follow the prompts to complete log-in.

4. Browse content using these options:
   - **What's new**: Recently-added titles for rent or purchase.
   - **Movies**: Movies you can rent or purchase.
   - **TV Shows**: TV shows you can rent or purchase.
   - **My Media**: Content you have previously purchased or rented.

5. When you find media you want to view, use these options:
   - **View trailer**: View a short clip from the movie or show.
   - **Buy**: Purchase the media for unlimited viewing on your device. Follow the prompts to enter payment details.
   - **Rent**: Purchase a time-limited download of the media. Follow the prompts to enter payment details.

6. For additional information about Media Hub, tap Menu ➔ Help.
**Media Hub Notices**

- Any media item (Media Content) may be rented or purchased after you create an account in Media Hub.
- Media Content that is downloaded may be viewed concurrently on up to five (5) devices with Media Hub that are also registered to the same account.
- You may choose to remove a device from your account no more than once every 90 days.
- You may remove Media Content from a device as many times as you like. You will have the ability to re-download the Media Content at a later point in time subject to content re-download availability and studio permissions.
- You MUST be in network coverage to license Media Content you have acquired through the Service.
- You can use 3G, 4G, or Wi-Fi connectivity in order to download Media Content.
- Unlike purchased Media Content, rented Media Content will be viewable on only 1 device in your account.
- Media Content is downloaded and saved onto the SD card.
- Your Media Content may pause/stop or not download in networks where there is a weak signal.
- You may begin watching downloaded Media Content as soon as a) license acquisition has occurred and b) sufficient amount of the Media Content has been buffered.
- You must finish watching rented Media Content within 24 consecutive hours of start of playback.
  - Stopping, pausing, or restarting rented Media Content does not extend the available viewing time.
  - In no event will rented Media Content be available for a period of more than thirty (30) days (or shorter on a title-by-title basis) after the Media Content has been rented (e.g., if you begin viewing rented Media Content on the 29th day after the rental transaction, but do not finish viewing the entire title, that rented Media Content may not be available for the entire twenty-four (24) consecutive hour period if such period would extend the viewable time beyond the thirty (30) day rental window).
- You cannot play any media content downloaded from Media Hub through any output on your mobile device, including All Share.
**T-Mobile TV**

T-Mobile TV is an application that allows you to get both live Standard and High definition TV and Video on Demand.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ (T-Mobile TV). The T-Mobile Terms and Conditions page displays.

**Note:** A data plan is required to use this feature. Charges may apply. Please contact your service provider for further details.

2. Read the on-screen description about the compatibility zoom feature and tap OK.

3. Tap Accept if you accept the Terms and Conditions. 
   – or –

   Tap Exit to close the application.

**Note:** T-Mobile TV must be initialized over a cellular network before it can be used. During this initial registration process, any current Wi-Fi connections must be disabled.

4. Tap Disable Wi-Fi if you currently have an active Wi-Fi connection.

5. If prompted, tap Yes to acknowledge you have a WebConnect data plan or tap No.

6. Tap Start Trial to begin a free 30-day trial of the service.
   - If you already have an account, you can skip the trial and just log in.

7. Tap any of the following categories to begin viewing: Home, Live TV, On Demand, My Media, Help, Search, or Live Channels.
**Play Movies**

This application allows you to connect to the Play Store, download a movie and then watch it instantly.

Choose from thousands of movies, including new releases and HD titles in the Play Store and stream them instantly on your Android phone or tablet.

Movies, previously rented via the Play Store are automatically added to your My Movies library across your devices.

Learn more about Google Play Movies at:
http://play.google.com/about/movies.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Play Movies.
2. Log on to your Google account if you have not already done so. A list of videos sorted on the SD card displays in the Video list.
3. Following the on-screen instructions for renting and viewing movies.
4. Tap the MY RENTALS tab to view movies you have rented.
5. Tap the PERSONAL VIDEOS tab to view movies you have on your phone or memory card.

**Play Music**

Also known as Google Music, allows you to browse, shop, and playback songs purchased from the Play Store. The music you choose is automatically stored in your Google Music library and instantly ready to play or download.

- Access the new music tab from within your Play Store application.

The Music application contains a music player that plays music and other audio files that you copy from your computer.

**Accessing the Music App**

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Play Music.

The Play Music app searches your online library and your device’s internal storage for music and playlists. This can take from a few seconds to several minutes, depending on the amount of new music added since you last opened the application.

2. If prompted, follow the on-screen instructions to link your current account to Google Play Music.
3. Tap an on-screen account to add it or select Add account to use a new account.
4. At the free songs screen, select either Get free songs or Skip.
   - Get free songs are downloaded via either the Internet or Play Store.
   - Follow the on-screen download and installation instructions.

5. Swipe left or right to browse through your new and available music. Music, albums, and artists are grouped into categories.
   It then displays a carousel view of your new and recent music, organized by album.

6. Swipe left or right to spin the carousel and browse through your new and recent music.

7. Tap an album to open it.

8. Return to the Library screen from most other screens in the Music application by tapping the Music application icon at the bottom-left of the screen.

Changing Library View

You can change the way you view the contents of your library.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Play Music.

2. While in a selection or screen, tap Music notification icon (near the top-left of the Application bar) or the tab name to back up to the main Music App menu.

3. Tap the name of the current view, such as Recent, near the top-left of the Application bar.

4. Tap an option to set how you view your library.
   The choices are: Recent, Albums, Artists, Songs, Playlists, or Genres.
Tab Options

There are various options available from the various tabs:

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Play Music.

Note: Some additional features such as “queue” are only available after a Google Store update.

2. From the upper-left of the application window, tap Options to access an available option.
   - Recent: to display the most recently played songs and albums
   - Albums: Play, Add to playlist, More by artist, Shop for artist, or Search.
   - Artists: Play, Add to playlist, Shop for artist, or Search.
   - Songs: Play, Add to playlist, Shop for artist, Delete, or Search.
   - Playlist: Play, Rename, or Delete.
   - Genres: Play or Search.

Note: The contents of your library display in a scrolling grid, list, or carousel, depending on the view.

Searching for Music

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Play Music.

2. Tap Search.

3. Type the name of an artist, album, song, or playlist.

4. Tap a matching song to play it, tap a matching album, artist or playlist to view a list of its’ songs.
   – or –
   - Tap Options next to an item in the list to play it, add it to a playlist, or shop for other music by the artist online.
Changing Music Settings

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Play Music.

2. Tap Menu. The following options display depending on the library view:
   - **Shuffle all**: Play all songs in a random order.
   - **Hide now playing bar / Show now playing bar**: Hide or show the Now Playing bar that displays at the bottom of the screen. You can return to the Now playing screen from other Music screens by tapping the name of the current song in the Now Playing bar.
   - **Make available offline**: In addition to playing the music that you add to your online library, you can play music stored on your device’s internal storage. Then you can listen to music when you have no Internet connection. To do this, make some of your online music available offline. For more information, refer to “Making Online Music Available Offline” on page 127.
   - **Offline music only**: Display only the music that is available offline.

   - **Hide labels / Show labels**: Hide or show labels. This option is not available in all library views.
   - **Settings**: Provides access to the Play Music settings.
   - **Help**: Displays application help information.

Listening to Music

You can listen to music by using your device’s built-in speakers, through a wired headset, or through a wireless Bluetooth stereo headset. For more information, refer to “Bluetooth” on page 148.

Press the Volume Key on the side of the device to activate on-screen volume control, then touch and drag on the scale to set volume. You can also press the Volume Key to adjust playback volume.
Options While Selecting a Song

The following options are available for playing songs, albums, or playlist, finding more information about artists, finding more music, and deleting songs:

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Play Music.

2. Select an album or song.

3. Tap the label area Options under an item.

   The following options display depending on the item view:

   • **Play**: Plays the selected song, album, or playlist.
   • **Add to playlist**: Add the song to a new playlist or an existing playlist.
   • **Shop for artist**: Launches Google to search for more songs by the selected artist.
   • **Delete**: Delete the song.
   • **Search**: Search Internet, Music Player, Play Music, or YouTube for an artist, album, or song.

Playing Music

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Play Music.

2. Tap a song in your library to listen to it.
   – or –
   While viewing a list of songs, tap Options next to a song and select Play.
   – or –
   While viewing a list of albums, artists, playlists, or genres, locate the label area Options under an item and tap Play.

   The **Now playing** screen opens and the song you selected or the first song in the album or playlist starts to play. The tracks in the current list play in order until you reach the end of the list (unless you choose a repeat option). Otherwise, playback stops only if you stop it, even when you switch applications.
Note: If you navigate away from the Now playing screen in the Music application, the Now Playing bar displays at the bottom of the screen. You can use this to control playback or tap menu ➔ Hide now playing bar.

Displaying the Now Playing Screen

If you navigate away from the Now playing screen, to return to the Now playing screen from other Music screens:

- Tap the name of the current song in the Now Playing bar.
- or –

Tap the Music notification icon in the System Bar (bottom-right of screen), and from the Status Details panel, select the song title.

You can also pause and resume playback and skip to the next or previous song in the Status Details panel.

For more information, refer to “Notifications” on page 29.

Options While Playing a Song

When you play a song, the Now playing screen displays. There are various options and controls available while a song is playing:

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Play Music.
2. Tap an album or song. For more information, refer to “Playing Music” on page 123.
   The Now playing screen displays.
3. Tap the SONG title to add the song to a playlist.
4. Tap the ARTIST name to view information about the artist associated with this song.
5. Tap ALBUM to list and play the songs on the album.
6. Tap menu to display the following options:
   • Settings: Displays the Music settings screen.
   • Help: Displays the application’s Help information.
7. Tap Options ➔ Add to playlist to add the song to a playlist.
8. The **Now playing** screen contains several buttons that you can tap to control the playback of songs, albums, and playlists:

- Tap Thumbs up or Thumbs down to add the song to a Thumbs up or Thumbs down playlist.
- Tap to go back to the previous song. Touch and hold to scan backward through the current song.
- Tap to pause playback.
- Tap to resume playback.
- Tap Thumbs up or Thumbs down to add the song to a Thumbs up or Thumbs down playlist.
- Tap to go back to the previous song. Touch and hold to scan backward through the current song.
- Tap to pause playback.
- Tap to resume playback.
- Tap to advance to the next song. Touch and hold to scan forward through the current song.
- Tap to repeat the current song, repeat all songs, or disable repeat mode.
- When Shuffle mode is enabled, songs play in random order. When disabled, songs play in the order they appear in List view.

**Creating a Playlist**

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps ➔ Play Music**
2. Tap the **Playlists** library view.
3. Tap **New playlist**. The New playlist pop-up displays.
4. Tap the **NAME** field to enter a name for the playlist.
5. Tap **OK** to save the new playlist.
Adding Songs To a Playlist

To add a song to a new or existing playlist while the song is playing:

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Play Music.
2. Tap an album or song list and play a song.
3. Tap the SONG field (at the left of the screen).
4. If the Add to new playlist pop-up displays, tap the NAME field to enter a name for the playlist.
   – or –
   If the Add to playlist pop-up displays, tap the playlist to which you want to add the song or tap New playlist to create a new playlist.
5. Tap OK. The playlist is saved with the song added to it.

Playing, Renaming, or Deleting a Playlist

To play, rename, or delete a playlist:

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Play Music.
2. Display the Playlists library view.
3. Tap next to a playlist title.
   • Tap Play to play the songs in the playlist.

Note: Renaming and Deleting is only available with end-user created playlists and not the device default entries.

• Tap Rename and use the keyboard to enter a new name for the playlist.
• Tap Delete and then tap OK to delete the playlist. Only the playlist is deleted. To delete individual songs, see “Options While Selecting a Song” on page 123.
Shopping for Music at the Play Store
To visit the Google Play™ Store where you can find and buy music:

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Play Music.
3. Tap Menu ➔ Help ➔ Music to view information about finding and buying music.

Making Online Music Available Offline
In addition to playing the music that you add to your online library, you can play music stored on your device’s internal storage. Then you can listen to music when you have no Internet connection. To do this, make some of your online music available offline.

Tip: You can also copy music directly from your computer to your device. For more information, refer to “Synchronizing with Windows Media Player” on page 154.

To make your online music available offline on your device:

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Play Music.
2. Change your library view to Albums, Artists, or playlists. For more information, refer to “Changing Library View” on page 120.
3. Tap Menu ➔ Make available offline and tap the album or playlist you want to make available offline. A green pin indicates that the item is already available offline.

Gray pins appear next to the items you can make available offline. A bar at the bottom of the screen shows how much space is available on your device for music and other files.

Dim green pins indicate songs or albums that you copied directly from a computer to your device.

4. Tap the gray pin next to each item you want to make available offline or tap a green pin to stop making it available offline. You can switch to other views of your library to make other kinds of items available offline as well.
5. Tap **Done** in the bar at the bottom of the screen. The Music application starts downloading the items to your device.

**Music Player**

The Music Player plays music and other audio files that you copy from your computer. The Music Player is an application that can play music files. The music player supports files with extensions AAC, AAC+, eAAC+, MP3, WMA, 3GP, MP4, and M4A. Launching the Music Player allows you to navigate through your music library, play songs, and create playlists (music files bigger than 300 KB are displayed).

**Playing Music**

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Music Player**.
   
   The Music Player application searches your device’s internal storage for music and playlists. This can take from a few seconds to several minutes, depending on the amount of new music added since you last opened the application. It then displays your music in several ways.

2. Tap **Songs, Playlists, Albums, Artists, Genres, Folders, Composers**, or **Years** from the left of the screen to change the way you view the contents of your library.

3. Scroll through the list and tap an entry to begin playback.

4. Tap the Music application icon at the top-left of the Application bar to return to the previous Music screen.

**Note:** The 5.1 channel sound effect works when earphones or sound is connected through the headset jack only.

---

**Managing Your Music**

**Searching for Music**

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** ➔ **Music Player**.

2. Tap **Search**.

3. Type the name of an artist, album, or song. Matching songs are displayed in a list below the search box.
4. Tap a matching song to play it. Select a matching album, or artist to view a list of its songs.

**Making a Song a Phone Ringtone**
1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Music Player.
2. Tap Menu ➔ Set as alarm tone.
3. Tap the desired song.
4. Tap Set to assign the new ringtone.

**Creating a Playlist**
1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Music Player ➔ Playlists.
2. Tap ➔ New playlist.
3. Select the name field to enter a name for the playlist.
4. Tap OK to save the new playlist.

**Renaming a Playlist**
1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Music Player.
2. Tap Playlists, select a playlist, and then tap Menu ➔ Rename playlist.
3. Tap the name field to enter a new name for the playlist.
4. Tap OK to save the new playlist.

**Adding Songs to Playlists**
1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Music Player.
2. Tap and select a playlist.
   – or –
   Tap Playlists, select a playlist, and then tap Add music.
   All songs are displayed.
3. Tap next to each song you want to add or next to Add all to add all songs to the playlist.
   The songs appear under the playlist to the right of the songs list.
4. Tap Done to save the playlist.
Removing Songs from Playlists
1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Music Player.
2. Tap and select a playlist.
   All songs are displayed to the left of the playlist and the songs in the playlist are displayed on the right, under the playlist name.
3. Tap to remove a song from the playlist.
4. Tap Done to save the playlist.

Changing the Order of a Playlist
1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Music Player.
2. Tap Playlists and select a playlist.
3. Tap Reorder to change the order of the songs.
   Tap the grid on an entry and drag the entry to a new position in the list.
4. Tap Done to change the order and save the playlist.

Playing a Playlist
1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Music Player.
2. Display the Playlists library view.
3. Tap Favorites, Most played, or Recently added, or tap a playlist title that you created.
4. Select a song to start playing the playlist at that song.

Deleting a Playlist
1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Music Player.
2. Tap Playlists and select a playlist.
3. Tap Delete in the Application bar.
4. Tap the box next to a playlist title. A check mark indicates the playlist is to be deleted.
5. Tap Remove ➔ OK to delete the selected playlist.
Changing Music Settings

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Music Player.

2. Tap Menu to display the following options:
   - **Delete**: Tap the box for any song or album you want to delete or tap the box for **Select all** to select every song or album. A check mark indicates the song or album is to be deleted. Tap **Delete** to delete the selected items.
   - **Share via**: Share your music by using AllShare, Dropbox, Wi-Fi Direct, Messaging, Bluetooth, Email, or Gmail. Select the songs you want to share and tap **Share**.
   - **Set as alarm tone**: Choose a song and tap **Set** to use the song as an alarm tone.
   - **Settings**: The following settings display:
     - **Advanced**
       - **Sound settings**: Choose **SoundAlive** and **Play speed** settings.
     - **Lyrics**: Display the lyrics of the song, if available.
     - **Music auto off**: Set the option Off or set your music to turn off automatically after 15 minutes, 30 minutes, 1 hour, 1 hour and 30 minutes, or 2 hours.

Listening to Music

You can listen to music by using your device’s built-in speakers, through a wired headset or through a wireless Bluetooth stereo headset. For more information, refer to “Bluetooth” on page 148.

Press the Volume Key on the side of the device to activate on-screen volume control, then touch and drag on the scale to set volume. You can also press the Volume Key to adjust playback volume.

Playing Music

To play a song:

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Music Player.

2. Select a song in your library to listen to it.
   - or –
   While viewing a list of albums or genres, tap the album thumbnail and then tap a song in the list of songs on the album.
The song you tap starts to play. The tracks in the current list play in order until you reach the end of the list (unless you choose a repeat option). Otherwise, playback stops only if you stop it, even when you switch applications.

**Accessing the Music Player**

If you navigate away from the Music Player application and music is playing, you can change songs or easily return to the Music Player:

1. Tap the Music notification icon in the System Bar (bottom-right of the screen).
2. In the Status Details, tap the song title to display the Music Player. You can also pause and resume playback and skip to the next or previous song in the panel. For more information, refer to “Notifications” on page 29.

**Music Player Options**

Music Player plays music and other audio files that you copy from your computer.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps → Music Player.
2. Tap a song or playlist to begin playback. The music player displays below (portrait mode) or to the right (landscape mode) of the music listing.
3. Tap the music player to enlarge it and tap the screen to display the sound and playlist controls.
4. During playback, use the sound and playlist controls:
   - **Favorite**: Tap the star to mark the current song as a favorite.
   - **Volume**: Tap to toggle Vibration or Silent mode and Sound mode, then touch and drag on the scale to set volume. You can also press the Volume Key on the side of the device to adjust playback volume.
   - **SoundAlive**: Tap to view and set SoundAlive options.
   - **Info**: Tap to view information about the current song.
- **List Mode**: Tap to switch to the list of songs.
- **Select Device**: Use AllShare to stream music to another device. For more information, refer to “AllShare” on page 158.

- **Shuffle**: When enabled, songs play in random order. When disabled, songs play in the order they appear in List view.
- **Progress Bar**: Touch and drag the end of the progress bar to scan forward or backward through the current song.
- **Playback Controls**: These buttons control the playback of songs:
  - Tap ⏯️ to advance to the next song. Touch and hold ⏯️ to scan forward through the current song.
  - Tap ⏪ to go back to the previous song. Touch and hold ⏪ to scan backward through the current song.
  - Tap ⏸️ to pause playback. Tap ⏯️️ to resume playback.
- **Time Indicators**: The time indicators show, in minutes and seconds, how much of the song has played (left) and the length of the song (right).
- **Repeat**: Tap to repeat the current song, repeat all songs, or disable repeat mode.
Options While Playing a Song

There are various options and controls available while a song is playing:

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps → Music Player, tap a song or an album, and then a song.

2. Tap the music player to enlarge it.

3. Tap Menu to display the following options:
   - Add to playlist: Add the song to a new playlist or an existing playlist.
   - Via Bluetooth: Play the current song by using a Bluetooth device.
   - Share via: Share the current song by using Dropbox, Wi-Fi Direct, Messaging, Bluetooth, Email, or Gmail.
   - Set as alarm tone: Use the current song as an alarm tone.
   - Settings: Displays Music Player settings. For more information, refer to “Changing Music Settings” on page 131.
Section 7: Web

This section describes the various Internet networking applications available on your device such as Google+ and Internet.

Google+

Share updates and see what is going on around you with Google+ for mobile.

- Share your thoughts and location.
- Instantly upload your photos and videos as you take them.
- Get updates from your circles in the stream.
- Check in to a place.
- Make plans on-the-go with group messaging.
- View posts from people around you.

To get started:

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Google+.
   The Google+ home screen displays.

2. Tap Menu ➔ Help and then touch a topic to learn more about using Google+.

Internet

Your device is equipped with a full HTML Browser that allows you to access the Internet.

Tip: Internet displays by default as a Primary shortcut on the Home screen.

- From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Internet.
  The Most visited screen displays.
3. Tap an entry, such as Google. The Google home screen displays.

**Navigating the Internet**

1. To select an item, tap an entry.
2. To scroll through a website, sweep the screen with your finger in an up or down motion.
3. Tap \( \rightarrow \) to return to the previous page.

The following options are available for Internet navigation.

**Command Keys**

- Tap \( \leftarrow \) Back or \( \rightarrow \) to return to the previous page.
- Touch and hold \( \leftarrow \) Back to display a list of Most visit pages.
- Tap \( \rightarrow \) Forward to go forward to a recent page.
- Tap \( \circ \) Refresh to reload the current page.

**Touching and Dragging**

- Touch and drag your finger on the screen to navigate pages and to reposition pages within the screen.

**Entering Text in a Field**

- While browsing, tap a text field to display the virtual QWERTY keyboard to enter text.

---

**Zoom**

- Tap the screen twice to zoom in or out.
- Use two fingers, such as your index finger and thumb, to zoom out by making an inward pinch motion on the screen. To zoom in, make an outward motion by sweeping your fingers out.

---

**Tip:** For convenient browsing, you can rotate the device to landscape mode.

**Selecting Items On a Page**

While browsing, use gestures and menus to navigate:

- Tap an item to select it.
- Tap a hyperlink to follow the link.
- Touch and hold on a hyperlink for these options:
  - \( \text{Open} \): Open the linked page.
  - \( \text{Open in new tab} \): Open a new window to display the linked page.
  - \( \text{Save link} \): Save the linked page to Download history.
  - \( \text{Copy link URL} \): Save the link’s URL to the clipboard.
  - \( \text{Select text} \): Copy the link text to the clipboard.
• Touch and hold an image for the additional options:
  – **Save image**: Download an image. View downloaded images in Gallery.
  – **Copy image**: Copy an image to the clipboard.
  – **View image**: View the image source.
  – **Set as wallpaper**: Use the image as your home screen wallpaper.

### Using Browser Windows

You can have multiple windows open at one time and easily switch between windows.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Internet.
2. To open a new window, tap at the top of the screen.
3. To switch to another open window, tap its tab at the top of the screen.
4. To delete an open window, tap the tab at the top of the screen, and then tap .

### Entering a URL

Access a website quickly by entering the URL.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Internet.
2. Tap the URL field at the top of the screen, then enter the URL using the virtual QWERTY keyboard.
   As you enter characters, potential matches display.

**Note:** Use the Delete key to clear the URL field, if necessary.

3. Tap a match to complete the URL.
**Copying Fields or Text**
Copy information from a webpage to the clipboard for pasting, searching, or sharing.

**Selecting, Copying, and Pasting Text**
1. From a Home screen, tap Apps → Internet.
2. Browse to a webpage.
3. On the webpage, touch and hold on the text until you see the text you want highlighted, then stop tapping the screen. The text is highlighted.
4. Touch and drag the tabs to the left or right to select more or less text.
5. Tap Copy at the top of the screen to copy the selected text or tap Done to stop.
6. To paste the copied text, navigate to the desired field (or to another application), then touch and hold in a text field and tap Paste in the pop-up.

**Copying and Pasting a Hyperlink or URL**
1. From a Home screen, tap Apps → Internet.
2. Browse to a webpage.
3. Touch and hold on the link or URL, then tap Copy link URL on the pop-up menu.
4. To paste the copied link or URL, navigate to the desired field (or to another application), then touch and hold in a text field and tap Paste on the pop-up menu.

**Using Bookmarks**
While browsing, bookmark a site to quickly access it later.

**Creating a bookmark**
1. From a Home screen, tap Apps → Internet.
2. Browse to a website, then tap Add bookmark. The Add bookmark options list displays. Confirm the Name and URL Address for the bookmark.
3. In the Account field, tap the drop-down menu, and tap Local or an account.
4. In the Add to field, tap the drop-down menu, and select Homescreen, Bookmarks, or a Other folder.
5. Tap OK to save the bookmark. A gold star ★ displays on the Bookmarked page.
Accessing Bookmarks and History
Launch a bookmarked page or reload recent pages.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Internet.
3. On the Bookmarks tab, use these options:
   • Tap a bookmark to load the page.
   • Touch and hold on a bookmark for these options:
     — Open: Open the bookmarked page.
     — Open in new tab: Open the linked page in a new window.
     — Edit bookmark: Make changes to the bookmark description.
     — Add shortcut to home: Create a bookmark on the Home screen.
     — Share link: Use Bluetooth, Dropbox, Email, Gmail, Google+,
       Messaging, Social Hub, or Wi-Fi Direct to send the link.
     — Copy link URL: Save the link’s URL to the clipboard.
     — Delete bookmark: Remove the bookmark.
     — Set as homepage: Assign the bookmarked link as the home page.

4. On the History tab, tap Today, Yesterday, Last month,
   Older, or Most visited to use these options:
   • Tap a page to reload it.
   • Tap the ★ next to a page to bookmark it. Tap a gold star ★ next to a page to remove the bookmark.
   • Touch and hold on a page for these options:
     — Open: Open the webpage.
     — Open in new tab: Launch the webpage in a new window.
     — Add bookmark/Remove from Bookmarks: Bookmark the page or remove the bookmark for this page.
     — Share link: Use Bluetooth, Dropbox, Email, Gmail, Google+,
       Messaging, Social Hub, or Wi-Fi Direct to send the link.
     — Copy link URL: Save the link’s URL to the clipboard.
     — Remove from history: Remove the record of this page.
     — Set as homepage: Assign the bookmarked link as the home page.
5. On the **Saved pages** tab, use these options:
   - Tap a page to reload it.
   - Touch and hold on a page and then select an available option:
     - **Open**: Open the bookmarked page.
     - **Add bookmark/Remove from Bookmarks**: Bookmark the page or remove the bookmark for this page.
     - **Share link**: Use Bluetooth, Dropbox, Email, Gmail, Google+, Messaging, Social Hub, or Wi-Fi Direct to send the link.
     - **Copy link URL**: Save the link’s URL to the clipboard.
     - **Delete saved page**: remove the page from Saved pages.
     - **Set as homepage**: Assign the bookmarked link as the home page.

---

### Internet Menu

While viewing a webpage, tap **Menu** for the following options:

- **New tab**: Open the webpage in a new window, under a new tab.
- **New incognito tab**: Open the webpage in a new window, under a new tab, and the pages you view in the new window will not appear in your browser history or search history. See the on-screen explanation of **going incognito**.
- **Add shortcut to home**: Add the URL for this webpage as a shortcut on the first home screen.
- **Share page**: Use Bluetooth, Dropbox, Email, Gmail, Google+, Messaging, Social Hub, or Wi-Fi Direct to send the webpage URL.
- **Find on page**: Search for content on the current page.
- **Desktop view**: Your browser displays a website in a modified format that makes it easier to read. Desktop view displays a website the same way it would appear on a PC.
- **Save for offline reading**: Saves the webpage so you can read it later even when offline.
- **Downloads**: View and manage recent downloads.
- **Print**: Print the current screen or page to a Samsung printer.
- **Settings**: Configure web settings.
Internet Settings

Use the browser settings to customize the browser.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Internet.
2. While viewing a webpage, tap Menu ➔ Settings.

Customize the Browser by using the following options:

**General**

- **Set home page**: View and set the default first page that displays when you launch Internet.

- **Form auto-fill**: Enable or disable form auto-fill to complete Internet forms with a single click.

- **Auto-fill text**: If Form auto-fill is enabled, set up the following information:
  - **Full name**: Enter your name.
  - **Company name**: Enter a company name.
  - **Address line 1**: Enter your address.
  - **Address line 2**: Enter any additional address information.
  - **City/Town**: Enter your city and town.
  - **County**: Enter your county.
  - **Zip code**: Enter your ZIP code.
  - **Country**: Enter your country.

- **Phone**: Enter your telephone number.
- **Email**: Enter a valid email address.

**Privacy and Security**

- **Clear cache**: Delete content and databases stored on the device.
- **Clear history**: Delete the list of previously-visited pages.
- **Show security warnings**: When enabled, the browser warns you if there is a problem with a site’s security.
- **Accept cookies**: When enabled, allows the browser to save and read cookie information used by webpages.
- **Clear all cookie data**: Delete cookie information saved to the device.
- **Remember form data**: When enabled, stores information you enter into forms to make future forms easier.
- **Clear form data**: Deletes saved form information.
- **Enable location**: When enabled, sites you visit can request access to your location.
- **Clear location access**: Clear location access for all websites.
- **Remember passwords**: When enabled, saves user names and passwords for sites you visit, to make future visits easier.
- **Clear passwords**: Clear all saved user names and passwords.
Accessibility

- **Force zoom**: Override the website’s request to control zoom.
- **Text size**: Use the Preview field and the following controls to configure text size:
  - **Scale text up and down**: Scale the text size up or down using a slider bar.
  - **Zoom amount on double tap**: Set how much to zoom when you double-tap the screen, from 175 to 225 percent.
  - **Minimum font size**: Set the minimum font size, which can range from 1 point to 24 points.
- **Inverted screen rendering**: Use the Preview screen and the following controls to configure inverted screen rendering:
  - **Inverted rendering**: Enable the display of websites with inverted colors – black becomes white and vice versa.
  - **Contrast**: If Inverted rendering is enabled, use this slider to set the contrast, which can range from 100 to 300 percent.

Advanced

- **Select search engine**: Choose a search engine from Google, Yahoo!, or Bing.
- **Open in background**: When enabled, new windows open behind the current window.
- **Enable JavaScript**: When enabled, Internet automatically runs JavaScript scripts on pages you visit.
- **Enable plug-ins**: When enabled, Internet automatically loads and runs plug-ins on pages you visit.
- **Website settings**: View and manage settings for individual websites.
- **Default zoom**: Adjusts the zoom feature. Set to Far, Medium, or Close.
- **Open pages in overview**: When enabled, displays an overview of newly-opened pages.
- **Auto-fit pages**: When enabled, Internet automatically sizes webpages to fit your device’s display.
- **Block pop-ups**: When enabled, blocks pop-up windows.
- **Text encoding**: Choose a default character set for webpages.
- **Reset to default**: Clear all browser data and reset all settings to the factory defaults.
Bandwidth management

- **Preload search results**: Enable the browser to preload high confidence search results in the background to help speed up searches. Options are: Never, Only via Wi-Fi, or Always.

- **Load images**: When enabled, images are automatically loaded when you visit a page. When disabled, images are indicated by a link, which you can tap to download the picture.

**Labs**

- **Quick controls**: When enabled, the Application and URL bars are hidden. To access the hidden controls, swipe inward from the left or right edge of the screen to access Quick Controls. For more information, refer to “Internet Quick Controls” on page 143.

- **Google Instant**: When enabled, you can use Google Instant when you use Google Search to show results as you type. Enabling this option can increase data use.

**Internet Quick Controls**

Use Quick Controls to maximize your viewing area while browsing the internet.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Internet.

2. While viewing a webpage, tap Menu ➔ Settings ➔ Labs, and then tap Quick Controls to enable the function.

3. Swipe inward from the left or right edge of the device screen to access quick controls.

4. Without lifting your finger, move to an option and then lift your finger to initiate the option.

5. To cancel, display the Quick controls and tap Menu ➔ Settings ➔ Labs and tap Quick controls to uncheck it.
Section 8: Connections

Your device includes features to connect to the internet and to other devices by using Wi-Fi, Bluetooth, or a USB cable.

**Wi-Fi**

Wi-Fi is a wireless networking technology that provides access to local area networks. Use your device’s Wi-Fi feature to:
- Access the internet for browsing or to send and receive email.
- Access your corporate network.
- Use hotspots provided by hotels or airports while traveling.
Wi-Fi communication requires access to an existing Wireless Access Point (WAP). WAPs can be Open (unsecured, as with most hotspots) or Secured (requiring you to provide login credentials). Your device supports the 802.11 a/b/g/n Wi-Fi protocol.

**Configuring Wi-Fi Settings**

For more information about configuring your device’s Wi-Fi settings, see “Wi-Fi” on page 201.

**Finding Wi-Fi Networks**

You can have your device automatically notify you of available networks. For more information, refer to “Advanced Settings” on page 202.

**Turning Wi-Fi On or Off**

Turn your device’s Wi-Fi service on or off. When you turn Wi-Fi service on, your device automatically searches for available, in-range WAPs (Wireless Access Points).

By default, your device’s Wi-Fi feature is turned off (deactivated). Activating Wi-Fi allows your device to discover and connect to compatible in-range WAPs (Wireless Access Points).

**Turning Wi-Fi On:**

1. From any screen, tap the Time in the Status Bar. The Status Details displays.
2. Tap Wi-Fi to turn Wi-Fi On.
   – or –
1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings.
2. Under Wireless and network, on the Wi-Fi tab, tap the OFF / ON icon to turn Wi-Fi on.

Turning Wi-Fi Off:
1. From any screen, tap the Time in the Status Bar. The Status Details displays.
2. Tap Wi-Fi to turn Wi-Fi Off.

Wi-Fi Status Indicators
The following icons indicate the Wi-Fi connection status:

Displays when Wi-Fi is active and there is an available open wireless network.
Displays when Wi-Fi is connected, active, and communicating with a Wireless Access Point (WAP).

Scanning and Connecting to a Wi-Fi Network
When you turn on Wi-Fi, your device searches for available Wi-Fi connections, then displays them on screen.
1. From any screen, tap the Time in the Status Bar. The Status Details displays.
2. Tap Wi-Fi to turn Wi-Fi On. Your device automatically scans for available Wireless Access Points.
3. When the scan is complete, select a Wi-Fi network to connect. If the Wi-Fi network is open, your device automatically connects. If the Wi-Fi network is secured, enter the password at the prompt to connect.

Adding a Wi-Fi Network Manually
1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings.
2. Under Wireless and network, on the Wi-Fi tab, tap the OFF / ON icon to turn Wi-Fi on.
3. Tap Add network, then enter network information:
   • Network SSID: Enter the name of the Wi-Fi Wireless Access Point (WAP).
   • Security: Select the type of security used by the WAP.
Note: Depending on the Security protocol used by the WAP, additional network information may be required, such as a Password.

- Password: If the WAP is secured, enter the password or hex key.

4. Tap Save to save the settings.

Wi-Fi Sleep Policy
Specify when to disconnect from Wi-Fi.
1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings.
2. Under Wireless and network, tap Wi-Fi.
3. Tap Menu ➔ Advanced.
4. Tap Keep Wi-Fi on during sleep. Choose from: Always, Only when plugged in, or Never (increases data usage).

Wi-Fi Direct
Wi-Fi Direct allows device-to-device connections so you can transfer large amounts of data over a Wi-Fi connection.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings ➔ More ... ➔ Wi-Fi Direct.
2. Tap the OFF / ON icon to turn Wi-Fi Direct on.
   If you are currently connected to a Wi-Fi network, a prompt displays Start Wi-Fi Direct operation. This will turn off Wi-Fi client/hotspot operation.
3. Tap OK to continue.
   Your device will begin to search for other devices enabled with Wi-Fi direct connections.
4. Tap the Wi-Fi Direct tab to display Available devices.
5. Enable Wi-Fi Direct (similar to Steps 1 and 2) on the device to which you want to connect.
6. Once the device you want to connect to is displayed, tap it.
   An Invitation to connect displays on the device to which you want to connect.
7. On that target device, tap **Accept**. You have 2 minutes to tap **Accept** on the device to which you want to connect for the connection to be made.

Once connected, the other device will show as **Connected** in your list of Wi-Fi Direct devices and the 📈 icon will display at the bottom of your screen.

**Sharing Information with a Connected Device**

To share videos, photos, or other information with the connected device, follow these steps:

1. View the information that you want to share. For example, if you want to share a photo, find the photo in your camera viewer or **Files** folder, then tap the **Share**, **Share via**, or **Send via** option.

2. Tap the **Wi-Fi Direct** option. The Wi-Fi Direct settings screen displays, Wi-Fi Direct is turned on, and your device scans for other devices.

3. Tap a connected device name. For example, Android_XXXX.

4. The other device displays a pop-up that indicates it is receiving the file. The file is transferred and can be found in **Files** within the ShareViaWifi folder.

**Note:** Depending on the other device model, the prompts and shared folder information may differ.
Bluetooth

Bluetooth is a short-range wireless communications technology for exchanging information over a distance of about 30 feet.

You do not need to line up the devices to send information with Bluetooth. If the devices are in range, you can exchange information between them, even if they are in different rooms.

Configuring Bluetooth Settings

Configure your device’s Bluetooth settings. For more information, refer to “Bluetooth” on page 203.

Turning Bluetooth On or Off

To turn Bluetooth on:
1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings.
2. Under Wireless and network, on the Bluetooth tab, tap the OFF / ON icon to turn Bluetooth on.

Note: When Bluetooth is on, the Bluetooth icon displays in the Status Bar.

To turn Bluetooth on or off:
1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings.
2. Under Wireless and network, on the Bluetooth tab, tap the OFF / ON icon again to turn Bluetooth off.

Bluetooth Settings

The Bluetooth settings menu allows you to set up many of the characteristics of your device’s Bluetooth service, including:
- Entering or changing the name your device uses for Bluetooth communication and description
- Setting your device’s visibility (or “discoverability”) for other Bluetooth devices
- Displaying your device’s Bluetooth address

To access the Bluetooth Settings menu:
1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings.
2. Under Wireless and network, on the Bluetooth tab, tap Menu.
3. Tap the Device name, Visible time-out, and Show received files fields to set the options.
To change your Bluetooth name:
1. Verify Bluetooth is active.
2. From the Bluetooth page, tap ☰ Menu ➔ Device name.
3. Enter a new name.
4. Tap OK to complete the rename process.

To change your Bluetooth visibility time out value:
1. Verify Bluetooth is active.
2. From the Bluetooth page, tap ☰ Menu ➔ Visible time-out.
3. Select a time out value. Choose from: 2 min, 5 min, 1 hour, Never timeout.

To view files received via Bluetooth devices:
1. Verify Bluetooth is active.
2. From the Bluetooth page, tap ☰ Menu ➔ Show received files to display a list of files received from external sources via Bluetooth communication.
3. Tap ⇪ to return to the previous page.

**Pairing with a Bluetooth Device**

Search for a Bluetooth device and pair with it, to exchange information between your device and the target device.

**Tip:** After pairing, your device and the target device recognize each other and exchange information without having to enter a passcode or PIN.

1. From a Home screen, tap ☰ Apps ➔ ☀ Settings.
2. On the Bluetooth tab, tap the OFF / ON icon to turn Bluetooth on.
3. Tap the Bluetooth tab and then enable the target device’s discoverable or visible mode.
4. Tap the Bluetooth tab and then select Scan for devices. Tap Stop at any time to stop scanning.
5. From the list of found devices, tap the target device, then follow the prompts to complete the pairing:
   - If the target device requires a PIN, enter a PIN for the target device and tap **OK**. When prompted, enter the PIN on the target device.
   - If the device allows automatic or smart pairing, your device attempts to pair with the device automatically. Follow the prompts on your device and the target device to complete the pairing.

**Sharing Data with a Bluetooth Device**

To send data to a Bluetooth device:
1. Select a file or item from an appropriate application.
2. Select an option for sharing data with the Bluetooth feature.

**Note:** The method for selecting an option may vary by data type.

3. Search for and pair with a Bluetooth device. For more information, refer to “**Pairing with a Bluetooth Device**” on page 149.

**Receiving Data from a Bluetooth Device**

To receive data from a Bluetooth device:
1. Turn Bluetooth on. For more information, refer to “**Turning Bluetooth On or Off**” on page 148.

   **Note:** To select the length of time that your device will be visible, select **Menu ➔ Visible time-out**.

2. Pair with the Bluetooth device from which you want to receive data. For more information, refer to “**Pairing with a Bluetooth Device**” on page 149.

   A Bluetooth authorization request pop-up displays when a Bluetooth device sends data to your device.

3. Select **Accept** to confirm that you are willing to receive data. A File received message displays.

Received data is saved to the Bluetooth folder. If you receive a contact, it is saved to your contacts automatically.
**Tethering**

This option allows you to share your device’s mobile data connection via a direct USB connection between your device and computer. A wireless version of this same functionality would be the Mobile AP feature.

**Note:** If additional software or USB drivers are required, navigate to: [http://www.samsung.com/us/support/downloads](http://www.samsung.com/us/support/downloads).

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings ➔ More ... ➔ Tethering and portable hotspot.
2. Plug in the USB cable between your computer and your device.
3. When prompted for a USB mode, tap to exit the menu.
4. Tap **USB tethering** from the Tethering menu. This places a green check mark next to the entry and activates the feature. A Tethering or Hotspot active notification briefly appears on the screen.

Looking for the USB Tethering active icon in the Status bar area of the screen.

**To disconnect tethering:**

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings ➔ More ... ➔ Tethering and portable hotspot.
2. Tap **USB tethering** from the Tethering menu to remove the check mark and deactivate the feature.
3. Remove the USB cable from the device.

**Portable Wi-Fi Hotspot**

This feature allows you to turn your device into a Wi-Fi hotspot. The feature works best when used in conjunction with HSPA+ (4G) data services (although 3G service can also be used).

**Important!** The Mobile AP service cannot be active at the same time as Wi-Fi. Please close your Wi-Fi connection prior to launching the Mobile AP service.

**Note:** You must have a tethering plan on your account to use the Wi-Fi hotspot. You can not use data on the device while it is being used as a hotspot.
To activate the Portable Wi-Fi Hotspot service:

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings ➔ More ... ➔ Tethering and portable hotspot.
2. Tap Portable Wi-Fi hotspot. This places a checkmark in the adjacent field to activate the service.
3. If prompted, tap Yes to continue with the activation.
4. Tap Configure portable Wi-Fi hotspot.
5. Create a new Network SSID name and then write it down.
6. Select a Security option (Open, WPA2-PSK, or WPA2-PSK) then tap Save.
7. Confirm the Mobile AP service icon appears at the bottom of the screen.

Note: By default, the connection is open and not secured. It is recommended that you access the Portable Wi-Fi Hotspot settings and create a secure connection by using a password for communication.

Note: Using your 4G service and Portable Wi-Fi Hotspot drains your device’s battery at a much faster rate than when using any other feature combination. The best way to keep using the device as a hotspot is to have it connected to a power supply.

To connect to the Hotspot:

1. Enable Wi-Fi (wireless) functionality on your target device (laptop, media device, etc.).
2. Scan for Wi-Fi networks from the device and select your device hotspot from the network list.
   - The SSID name for your device’s hotspot is determined by what you entered into the Network SSID field.
   - You can change the name by tapping Configure portable Wi-Fi hotspot ➔ Network SSID and changing the entry.
3. Select this Hotspot and follow your on-screen instructions to complete the connection.
4. Launch your Web browser to confirm you have an Internet connection.
To secure the Portable Hotspot service:
The two most common methods for securing your connection to the Hotspot are to a security method (WPA2 PSK) and to Hide your device’s SSID name.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings ➔ More ... ➔ Tethering and portable hotspot ➔ Configure portable Wi-Fi hotspot.
2. Tap the Security field and select WPA2 PSK.
3. With security enabled, enter a new password into the Password field.

**Important!** The more complex the password, the harder it will be for intruders to break your security. It is recommended that you not use names, birthdays, or other personal information.

4. Tap Save to store the new settings.

**Kies Via Wi-Fi**

Samsung Kies is a software that enables you to update your device firmware, synchronize files, and transfer data to and from your device directly by connecting to the PC.

**Note:** Some features will be supported through the System Updates feature in the future. For more information, refer to “Software Update” on page 241.


**Note:** Samsung Kies works on both PC and Macintosh computers.

**Connecting With Samsung Kies**

1. Install Samsung Kies software on your PC.

**Warning!** Close any running applications before connecting your device to a PC.

2. Run Samsung Kies.
3. From a Home screen, tap 
   Apps ➔ Settings ➔ More ... ➔ Kies via Wi-Fi.
   Select the source of the Wi-Fi connection for Kies air.

4. Follow the prompts from Kies to update your device firmware.

5. Refer to Samsung Kies Help for more information.

**Synchronizing with Windows Media Player**

Ensure that Windows Media Player is installed on your PC.

1. Attach your device to the computer with the USB cable.
   Your computer recognizes the connection and displays the AutoPlay screen.

2. Click the option to **Sync digital media files to this device** to synchronize music files.

3. Select and drag the music files you want to the sync list and begin synchronizing.

4. When finished, exit Windows Media Player and disconnect the USB cable.

**Connecting as a Mass Storage Device**

You can connect your device to a PC as a removable disk and access the file directory.

1. Attach your device to the computer with the USB cable.
   Your computer recognizes the connection and displays the AutoPlay screen.

2. Click the option to Open device to view files.
   You should see a Tablet folder.

3. Copy files to or from the PC from or to the device (Tablet folder).

4. When finished, close the PC folder and disconnect the USB cable.
GPS Applications

GPS applications allow you to achieve real-time, GPS-enabled, turn-by-turn navigation and to access local searches based on a variety of category parameters.

To receive better GPS signals, avoid using your device in the following conditions:

- inside a building or between buildings
- in a tunnel or underground passage
- in poor weather
- around high-voltage or electromagnetic fields
- in a vehicle with tinted windows

Global GPS turn-by-turn navigation, mapping, and Point of Interest content is available for three continents, including North America (U.S., Canada, and Mexico), Western Europe, and China, where wireless coverage is available.

Important! If you tap or cover the internal GPS antenna while using GPS services, it may impede the GPS signal resulting in the GPS services not working in an optimal manner. Refer to the following diagram to locate the approximate location of the internal GPS antenna.
Section 9: Applications and Widgets

This section contains a description of each application that is available on the Apps screen, its function, and how to navigate through that particular application. If the application is already described in another section of this user manual, then a cross reference to that particular section is provided. Various widgets are also described.

Tip: To open applications quickly, add the icons of frequently-used applications to one of the Home screens. For details, see “App Shortcuts” on page 38.

Update Available

When you open an application that is preloaded on your device, an Update Available message may be displayed if there is a new version of the app available.

- Tap Upgrade to update the app or tap Not Now to open the app without updating.

For more information, refer to “Updates to Downloaded Apps” on page 188.

Access T-Mobile

This application provides you online access to account information such as your current activity, billing information, service plans, downloads, and other information.

Note: Wi-Fi connection must be disabled prior to use, this application requires use of a T-Mobile network connection.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ (Access T-Mobile).

2. Scroll to the bottom of the application screen and select one of three available options:
   - My Account provides access to account-specific features such as: Bill Cycle start date, Usage, and Detailed usage information.
   - Billing provides details about your current billing summary.
   - Plans & Services provides about both your current plan, other available plans and other related services.
• **Other T-Mobile Links** provides links to other T-Mobile related information.

• **Settings & Support** provides access to Settings & Content options (ex: My Downloads, MobileLife, More for Me Settings, Voicemail Settings), and Terms & Condition information.

### Alarm

Set alarms for reminders or for wake-up times.

### Adding and Configuring Alarms

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Alarm.
2. Tap Create alarm or tap an alarm that is already set.
3. Tap available fields to configure the alarm:
   - **Time**: Set a time for the alarm to sound. Tap the up/down arrows to change the hour and minute, and select AM or PM.
   - **Label**: Tap the field and use the keyboard to enter a name for the alarm.
   - **Repeat**: Choose days for the alarm to repeat. Alarm days are blue.
   - **Ringtone**: Choose a tone for alarms.
   - **Vibrate**: Enable or disable vibration for the alarm.
   - **Snooze**: Enable or disable the snooze option for the alarm.
4. Tap Done to save the alarm.
   The main Alarm screen displays showing the new or updated alarm.

### Activating Alarms

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Alarm.
2. Tap Turn alarm on to activate the alarm. A gray alarm means the alarm is deactivated.
3. Tap an alarm to change any of its settings and then select Done to save the updates.

### Deactivating and Deleting Alarms

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Alarm.
2. Touch and hold an alarm and then tap one of the following options:
   - **Delete alarm**: Delete the alarm.
   - **Deactivate alarm**: Turn off the alarm.
   - or –
   - Tap Delete and select the existing alarms you want to delete, and then tap Done.
 Turning Off an Alarm

When the alarm sounds, to turn off the alarm:
- Touch and drag \( \text{X} \) in any direction.

 Setting the Snooze Feature

To activate the Snooze feature after an alarm sounds:
- Touch and slide \( \text{S} \) in any direction. Snooze must first be set in the alarm settings.

 Alarm Settings

To configure general alarm settings:
1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Alarm.
2. Tap Settings. The following options display:
   - **Alarm in silent mode**: Enable alarms to play even if the tablet is in Silent mode.
   - **Alarm volume**: Touch and drag the slider to set Alarm volume.
   - **Snooze duration**: Set the snooze delay time to 3, 5, 10, 15, or 30 minutes.
   - **Snooze repeat**: Indicate how many times to repeat the snooze alarm: 1, 2, 3, 5, or 10 times.
   - **Side button settings**: Set what action the side buttons should take during an alarm: None, Snooze, or Dismiss.

   - **Set default ringtone**: Choose a ringtone to play as a default, if the Ringtone is not defined for an alarm. Tap the button next to the ringtone you want to set and tap OK.

 AllShare

AllShare allows your tablet to stream photos, music, and videos from its memory to other Digital Living Network Alliance (DLNA) certified devices. Your tablet can also play digital content streamed from other DLNA certified devices.

Note: To view more information about DLNA certified products visit [http://www.dlna.org/home](http://www.dlna.org/home).

 Configuring AllShare

Connect to Wi-Fi, configure AllShare settings to identify your device as a server, and set treatment of copied files.
1. Connect to a Wi-Fi network. For more information, refer to “Scanning and Connecting to a Wi-Fi Network” on page 145.
2. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ AllShare 📱.
3. Tap齿轮Settings to configure these settings:
   - **Media server name**: Use the keyboard to enter a new media server name, if desired (the default is your device’s default name), then tap Save.
   - **Share media**: Allows you to restrict what is shared from your device. Tap the items you want to share and tap OK.
   - **Access point network**: Turn on your Wi-Fi service and connect to an available Wi-Fi Access Point.
   - **Upload from other devices**: Set your device’s treatment of files copied from other devices. Choose from Always accept, Always ask, or Always reject, then tap OK.

4. Tap one of the device entries on the left of the AllShare screen. My device lists the Videos, Photos, and Music files on your device.

5. Tap a file to play it.
   The Select device pop-up displays. Tap the playback device.

6. Touch and hold a file to view details about the file, such as, Title, Date created, File location, and so on.

---

**Amazon**

This mobile application provides a user with access to the online Amazon website.

1. From a Home screen, tap  
   ![Amazon](amazon.png) Apps → (Amazon).

2. Log in to the site and follow the on-screen instructions.

**Asphalt 6**

Provides access to a built-in HD racing video game.

1. From a Home screen, tap  
   ![Asphalt 6](asphalt6.png) Apps → (Asphalt 6).

2. Follow the on-screen prompts.

**Blio eBooks T-Mobile**

Blio® eBooks is an eReading application that presents eBooks just like the printed version, in full color, and with all of the features you’d want from an eReader.

1. From a Home screen, tap  
   ![Blio eBooks T-Mobile](blooebooks.png) Apps → (Blio eBooks T-Mobile).
2. From the login screen, tap **Sign in** to enter your previously created login information.

   – or –

   Tap **Create Account** to begin creating a new account. Follow the on-screen prompts.

3. Read the on-screen welcome information and tap **Close**.

4. Tap an available on-screen option and follow the prompts. Choose from: **Free**, **Browse**, **Shop**, and **Search**.

**Calculator**

The calculator provides the basic arithmetic functions to solve simple arithmetic problems and advanced operators to solve more complex problems.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Calculator.
2. Enter the first number using the numeric keys.
3. Enter the operation for your calculation by tapping the + (add), - (subtract), × (multiply), or ÷ (divide) key.
4. Enter the next number.
5. To view the result, tap the = (equals) key.
6. Repeat Steps 3 through 5 as many times as required.

7. Tap C to clear the result.

8. For more advanced problems, rotate your device to landscape mode and use the advanced operators sin, ln, cos, log, tan, and so on, just as you would on a pocket calculator.

9. Touch and hold the Calculator’s display to copy or cut the contents of the display.

   **Copied to clipboard** displays. Paste the copied value in another app.

**Calendar**

Your device includes a powerful Calendar to help you organize your schedules more conveniently and effectively. Learn to create and manage events and tasks, and set alarms to remind yourself of important events and tasks.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Calendar.
2. Tap a tab to choose a calendar view:
   - **Year**: Display all twelve months of this year. Sweep across the years at the bottom of the screen to display another year.
   - **Month**: Display the current month. Tap a month and year at the bottom of the screen to display another month.
- **Week**: Display the current week. Tap a week at the bottom of the screen to display another week.

- **Day**: Display today’s schedule by hour. Tap day at the bottom of the screen to display another day.

- **List**: Display only event and task names and dates for a selected year. Tap a year at the bottom of the screen to display another year. Tap a date to hide or show the event or task name.

- **Task**: Display your list of tasks. Tap the sort field to change how your tasks are sorted. Tasks can be sorted by due date, priority, date, week, month, or group.

3. Swipe left or right across the screen to view other days or other weeks. Swipe up or down the screen to view other events.

4. To find an event or task, tap Search. Use the on-screen keyboard to enter a search term. Possible events display as you type.

    Tap an event to send, edit, or delete the event. For more information, refer to “Creating an Event or Task” on page 162.

5. Tap Add event / Add task and then tap Done to add a new event to your calendar.

6. Tap Menu for these options:
   - **Zoom in**: In the Week and Day views, increase the size of the area being viewed.
   - **Zoom out**: In the Week and Day views, decrease the size of the area being viewed.
   - **Go to**: Use the Set date pop-up to enter a date and then tap Set to display that date on your calendar.
   - **Delete**: Delete events for the year, month, week, day, week, month, before today, or all events, depending on the Calendar view.
   - **Sync**: Manually synchronizes the calendar entries among all of your current accounts, for example, Gmail, Exchange, and so on.
   - **Settings**: Customize the calendar. For more information, refer to “Calendar Settings” on page 163.
   - **Show controls / Hide controls**: Show or hide a small month calendar and a list of events in landscape mode.

7. Tap Today to return to the current date.
8. Tap **Calendars** to configure which events to display.
   Tap **Add account ➔ Add account** to add additional accounts from which calendar events can be synced.

**Creating an Event or Task**

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps ➔ Calendar**.
2. Double-tap the date for which you want to enter an all-day event or task.
   - Tap the **Add event** or **Add task** tab.
   - Tap the **My calendar** field and tap a calendar to which the event or task should be added.
   - Use the keyboard to enter the event or task name.
   - or –
   - Tap the date for which you want to enter an event or task.
   - Tap **.**
   - Tap the **Add event** or **Add task** tab.
   - Enter the event or task information.
3. Tap **Save**.

**Managing Events**

You can delete, send, and edit events on your mobile device:

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps ➔ Calendar**.
2. Tap an event. A pop-up displays event information.
3. Tap **Options**.
4. Tap **Delete** and then tap **OK** to delete the event.
   - or –
   - Tap **Share** and then select **Bluetooth**, **Dropbox**, **Email**, **Messaging**, or **Wi-Fi Direct** to share the event.
   - Tap **Edit** to update the event details.
**Add Additional Calendar Accounts**

1. From a Home screen, tap \[Apps → Calendar \]
   \[Calendars → Add account.\]
   – or –
   From a Home screen, tap \[Apps → Settings \]
   \[Accounts and sync. \]

   The Accounts and sync screen displays.

2. Tap \[Add account\] to display the Add account option.

3. Select an account type and enter your account information.

**Calendar Settings**

To set up Calendar preferences:

1. From a Home screen, tap \[Apps → Calendar \]

2. Tap \[Menu → Settings. \]

   The following options display:

   - **View settings**
     - **First day of week**: Choose a day to begin each week.
     - **Hide declined events**: Enable or disable display of events.
     - **Lock time zone**: Allows you to lock event times and dates based on your selected time zone, which is defined by the following field.
     - **Select time zone**: If **Lock time zone** is enabled, used this option to select a time zone to lock event times and dates.
     - **Show week number**: Show the week number to the left of each week in the Month view.
     - **Calendars**: Enable calendars for your various accounts.

   - **Event notification**
     - **Set alerts & notifications**: Tap to select, which allows you to set the Alert, Status bar notification, or Off.
     - **Select ringtone**: Choose a tone for calendar notifications.
     - **Vibration**: Enable or disable vibration mode.
     - **Default reminder time**: Set the default time for a notification before an event is to occur.
     - **Notifications while screen is off**: Enable or disable the display of notifications on the full screen while the screen is turned off.
Sync settings

- **Sync events/tasks**: Displays the General sync settings.
  
  For more information, refer to “Accounts and Synchronization” on page 220.

  *(Accounts)*: Tap an account and then tap the check box to enable or disable the calendar sync for that account.

**Camera**

Take photos and record video with your device’s built in Camera.

For more information, refer to “Camera” on page 96.

- From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Camera.

**Contacts**

Store contact information for your friends, family and colleagues, to quickly access information or to send a message. For more information, refer to “Contacts” on page 61.

- From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Contacts.

**Downloads**

Files, apps, and other items you download in Internet, Gmail, Email, or in other ways, are stored on your tablet’s internal storage. Use the Downloads app to view, reopen, or delete what you have downloaded.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Downloads.

2. Tap an item to open it.

3. Tap headings for earlier downloads to view them.

4. Tap items you want to send, to check them, and then tap Share via. Select an option to share the item. Options are: AllShare, Bluetooth, Dropbox, Email, Gmail, Google+, Messaging, Photo editor, Picasa, Social Hub, or Wi-Fi Direct.

5. Tap items you want to delete, to check them, and then tap Delete. The items are deleted from your tablet.

6. Tap Sort by size or Sort by date, at the bottom of the Downloads pop-up, to switch back and forth.
**Dropbox**

Works to provide access to your desktop files directly from your device. This application allows you to bring your files with you when you’re on the go, edit files in your Dropbox from your device, upload photos and videos to Dropbox, and share your selected files freely with family and friends.

The in-device application works in conjunction with a partner program placed on a target computer using an active Internet connection.

Dropbox creates a folder that automatically synchronizes its contents across all of your connected devices on your account. Update a file to your Dropbox on your computer, and its automatically updated to the same folder on your other devices.

**Download the Desktop application**

1. Use your computer’s browser to navigate to: http://www.dropbox.com/.

2. Follow the on-screen setup and installation instructions on your target computer containing the desired files.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Important!</th>
<th>The computer application must be installed on the computer containing the desired files. This computer must have an active Internet connection.</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Note:</td>
<td>It might be necessary to configure your router’s firewall settings to allow this application to gain access to the Internet.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Accessing Dropbox on your Device**

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Dropbox ➔ Start.

2. Enter your Email and Password, and tap Log in.
   – or –
   Tap Create a free account and follow the on-screen instructions to register for a new account.

3. Follow the on-screen instructions.

4. Initially, you will need to configure your Camera upload parameters. Choose from Wi-Fi only or Wi-Fi or data plan.
Caution! Enabling this feature can incur data charges (depending on your plan) if the Wi-Fi or data plan is selected.

5. Tap Access Dropbox at the top of the application window to access the files and folders you are currently sharing from your computer.

6. Tap an item to open it.

7. Touch and hold an on-screen item to choose from additional options:
   - Share via applications such as: Copy link, Bluetooth, Email, Gmail, Google+, Messaging, or Wi-Fi Direct.
   - Favorite to tag an image as a favorite.
   - Delete to erase the current file.
   - Rename to rename the current file.
   - Export to transfer the current file to another location via: Save to SD card, Bluetooth, Email, Gmail, Google+, Group Cast, Messaging, Picasa, Wi-Fi Direct, or Gallery.

8. Tap Up a Directory Level at the top of the application window to navigate up a single level with every tap.

9. Tap (Tag as Favorite) at the top of the application window to access the

Manually uploading a Picture to Dropbox

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps → Camera.
2. After the image is taken, tap the Image Viewer box at the bottom right. This previews the current image.
3. Tap Share via to reveal the image options at the top of the screen.
4. Tap Dropbox select a folder location and tap Upload.

Note: If your share folder is located on your computer, you will momentarily receive an on-screen popup notifying you that a new image was uploaded to your shared Dropbox folder.
Email

Send and receive email using popular email services. For more information, refer to “Email” on page 82.

From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Email.

Files

Find, view, and manage folders and files, such as music files, photo files, video files, and so on, stored on your tablet. If the file is associated with an application on your device, you can launch the file in the application.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Files.
2. Tap a folder and scroll down or up until you locate a file.

Note: You may have to tap one or more subfolders before you encounter files.

3. Tap a file to launch it in the associated application, if the file is associated with an application.

4. While browsing files, use these controls:
   - Up: Display a higher directory.
   - Search: Use the keyboard to enter a search term. The current folder is searched and results are displayed. Tap X to remove the search field.
   - Display mode: Enable or disable thumbnails for each file.
   - Root: Display the root directory.
   - Add Folder: Add a new folder in the current folder.
   - Mark files: Tap the box to the left of each file or next to the folder to select all files in the folder. Then tap send, copy, cut, or delete in the Application bar.
5. To view a photo file:
   - Tap the file.
   The Gallery app is used to open the photo.
   For more information, refer to “Viewing Photos and Videos” on page 111.

6. To view a video file:
   - Tap the file.
   The Video player is launched and plays the video.
   For more information, refer to “Video Player” on page 106.

**Gallery**

Use Gallery to view, capture, and manage photos and videos.
For more information, refer to “Gallery” on page 110.

- From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Gallery.

**Get Web Now**

Allows you to enable your device to be used on the T-Mobile Broadband network for high-speed data access. Once activated, you’ll be able to purchase a Pre-paid Mobile Broadband pass that will allow you to access and browse the Web.

This is an application that allows you to purchase pre-paid Web minutes if you do not already have a monthly data plan.

---

**Important!** If you already have an activated pre-paid pass or a monthly data plan on your account, there is no need to use this service.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Get Web Now.

2. If prompted to enable Compatibility Zoom, tap OK.

3. Read the on-screen information.

4. Tap Continue to begin using the Internet.

**Note:** If prompted, select Disable Wi-Fi. This service must be used while on a network connection.

**Gmail**

Send and receive email with Gmail, Google’s web-based email. For more information, refer to “Gmail” on page 78.

- From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Gmail.
Google+

Share updates and see what is going on around you with Google+ for mobile.
For more information, refer to “Google+” on page 135.

- From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Google+.

Internet

Your device includes a full HTML browser, to access the internet. For more information, refer to “Internet” on page 135.

Tip: A shortcut to Internet displays on the main Home screen by default.

- From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Internet.

Latitude

With Google Latitude, you can see the location of all of your friends on a map or on a list. You can also share or hide your location.

You must first set up your tablet to use wireless networks to help pinpoint your location. Also, Latitude works best when Wi-Fi is enabled.

To enable Wi-Fi:

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings.
2. Tap Location services ➔ Use wireless networks.
   A green check mark ✅ indicates the feature is enabled.
3. Tap Location services ➔ Use GPS satellites.
   A green check mark ✅ indicates the feature is enabled.
4. Tap Location services ➔ Location and Google search.
   A green check mark ✅ indicates the feature is enabled.
5. Under Wireless and network, on the Wi-Fi tab, tap the OFF / ON icon to turn Wi-Fi on.
   For more information, refer to “Wi-Fi” on page 144.
6. Log on to your Google account.
   To create a Google account or set up your Google account on your device use Accounts and sync settings. For more information, refer to “Accounts and Synchronization” on page 220.

7. Tap  Home ➔ Apps ➔ Latitude.
   Your location is displayed on the map, accurate to 30 meters.

**Sharing Your Location with Friends**

1. From the Latitude map screen, tap to display your Latitude list of friends. At first, only your name is displayed.

2. Tap Menu ➔ Add friends.

3. Tap Select from Contacts and select a contact — or —
   Tap Add via email address, enter an email address, and tap the Send key or close the keyboard and tap Add friends.

4. At the Send sharing requests prompt, tap Yes.

Your friend will receive an email or text message with your location marked on a map. They will also receive instructions on how to view your location from the Internet or use Latitude on their device, if it is available. Once they acknowledge your request, their location will display on your tablet. They can share their location from their computer, phone, or tablet.

For more information, go to http://www.google.com/latitude.

**Latitude Menu**

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Latitude.

2. Tap , if necessary.

3. From the top-right select any of the following functions:
   • My Location Uses GPS technology to determine your current location.
   • Local Launch the Local app. For more information, refer to “Local” on page 171. This option only displays in portrait mode.
   • Directions Allows you to enter a start and end point for directions.
• **Layers**: Enable or disable a map layer to display. Choose from Traffic, Satellite, Terrain, Transit Lines, Latitude, My Maps, Bicycling, or Wikipedia. This option only displays in portrait mode.

— or —

Tap **Menu** for these options:

• **Add friends**: Share your location with friends. For more information, refer to “Sharing Your Location with Friends” on page 170.

• **Check in**: Tap a location to check-in so others will know your location.

• **Refresh friends**: Update your Latitude list of friends.

• **Show stale friends / Hide stale friends**: Show or hide friends depending on the accuracy of their Latitude information.

• **Location settings**: Configures the location reporting settings. For more information, refer to “Maps Settings” on page 175.

• **Clear Map**: Remove search results from the map.

• **Local**: Provides access to the Local feature.

• **Layers**: Provides access to the Layers feature.

• **Join Latitude/Latitude**: Join Latitude, to share your location with friends you choose and Google.

• **My Places**: Displays a list of Starred places.

• **Offers**: Displays nearby local offers based on your current location.

• **Settings**: Configure settings. For more information, refer to “Maps Settings” on page 175.

• **Help**: Launches Google mobile Help.

---

**Local**

Local (formerly known as Google Places) displays company logos on a layer of Google Maps. When viewing an area you can quickly locate a business or person, find out more information about the business, see coupons, public responses, and more.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps → Local**.
2. Tap **Search** and then use the **Find places** field to manually enter a desired place or choose from among the various categories. Matches are filtered by those closest to your current location.
3. Locate and tap one of the listed places (Restaurants, Cafes, Bars, Attractions, [user added searches], RECOMMENDATIONS, or IN THIS AREA a list of places within this category displays.

4. Tap the Maps icon to launch the related maps feature.  
   – or –  
   Tap Menu and then tap either My Places ➔ Starred Places.
   – or –  
   Tap the Maps icon (upper-right) to launch the related maps feature.

• Tap Menu ➔ Latitude. The functions of this application are similar to those of the Navigation application, but work along with the Latitude service where you can share your location with your chosen Google friends.

---

**Lookout Security**

Lookout Security™ provides mobile device-specific security features that are coupled with a minimal performance hit. Lookout Mobile Security provides key security options that are unique to the mobile market. Along with the antivirus and anti-malware tech, there's a lost and stolen phone locator service, an application privacy adviser, and a backup service.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Lookout Security.

2. Read the on-screen descriptions and tap Get started to begin your configuration.

3. Read the on-screen information about Security and if desired, tap the Enable Security field to activate the feature.

4. Tap Next.

5. Read the on-screen information about Backup and if desired, tap the Enable Backup field to activate the feature.

6. Tap Next.
7. Read the on-screen information about the feature that can help locate your missing phone and if desired, tap *New user* (to setup a new account) or *Existing user* (to log into your account field to activate the feature).

8. Tap **Start Lookout**.
   - From the main application, the main features are presented as buttons. Tap one to reveal a button that will run the feature.

**Maps**

Use Google Maps to find your current location, get directions, and other location-based information.

**Tip:** A shortcut to Maps displays on the main Home screen by default.

**Note:** You must enable location services to use Maps. Some features require Standalone or Google location services. For more information, refer to “Location Services” on page 221.

- From the Home screen, tap 

**Navigating the Map**

**Zooming**

- Double-tap on the screen to zoom in.
- Use two fingers, such as your index finger and thumb, to zoom out by making an inward pinch motion on the screen. To zoom in, make an outward motion by sweeping your fingers out.

**Tip:** For convenient browsing, you can rotate the device to landscape mode.

**Scrolling**

- Touch and drag on the screen to reposition the map in the display.

**Tap**

- Tap an icon on the map to display information about the location. For example, your location is indicated by a flashing and a pop-up that displays your name.
Maps Menu

1. From the Home screen, tap Maps.

2. From the top-right select any of the following functions: My Location, Local, Directions, and Layers. For more information, refer to “Other Map Options” on page 174.

– or –

While viewing a map, tap Menu for these options:

- **Clear Map**: Remove search results from the map.
- **Join Latitude/Latitude**: Join Latitude, to share your location with friends you choose and Google.
- **My Places**: Display starred locations.
- **Offers**: Displays nearby local offers based on your current location.
- **Settings**: Configure settings. For more information, refer to “Maps Settings” on page 175.
- **Help**: Learn about Google maps.

Tip: Local and Layers display in the Application Bar in landscape mode.

Other Map Options

Tap the indicated icon to use these additional Map options:

- **Search Maps**: Use the keyboard to enter your request to Search the map for a city, location, and so on. Suggestions are displayed as you type.

- **Speak**: Just speak a city, location, and so on, to display.

- **Compass**: Set the map to always display north at the top of the screen or to automatically rotate like a compass, keeping north on the map facing north, and so on. Your device may have to be calibrated the first time you use this feature. Follow the on-screen instructions.

- **Local**: Launch the Local app. For more information, refer to “Local” on page 171.
Maps Settings

Use the Maps settings to customize your Maps application.

1. From the Home screen, tap Maps.
2. Tap Menu ➔ Settings to set the following Maps options:
   - Display: Set the following Maps display options:
     - Zoom Buttons: If enabled, the zoom in (↑) and zoom out (↓) buttons are displayed on the map.
   - Cache:
     - Automatic caching: If enabled, automatic caching occurs while charging and using either Wi-Fi or mobile networks.
     - Clear map tile cache: Tap OK to clear map tile cache.
   - Location settings: These settings display if you have joined Latitude.
     - Location reporting: To update your location automatically, set the following options:
       - Detect your location: Enable or disable whether your location is updated automatically.
       - Set your location: Set your location manually.
       - Do not update your location: Your friends cannot see your automatic location.
   - Directions: Displays the Directions pop-up. Enter My Location and End point or tap the button to the right of the fields to choose your current location, a contact’s location, or to tap a point on the map.
     - Tap the automobile, bus, bicycle, or walking icon for the appropriate directions. Then tap Go to display a list of directions.
     - Tap the Directions list and scroll up or down. Tap an entry in the Directions list to show the point mentioned on the map.
   - Layers: Enable or disable a map layer to display. Choose from Traffic, Satellite, Terrain, Transit Lines, Latitude, My Maps, Bicycling, or Wikipedia.
   - Scale bar: If enabled, the scale bar is displayed on the map, which shows the scale of the map in feet and meters.
   - Bubble action: If enabled, the “Get directions” button appears within on-screen bubbles.
   - Location settings: These settings display if you have joined Latitude.
     - Location reporting: To update your location automatically, set the following options:
       - Detect your location: Enable or disable whether your location is updated automatically.
       - Set your location: Set your location manually.
       - Do not update your location: Your friends cannot see your automatic location.
     - Enable location history: This history is only seen by you.
     - Manage your friends: Add or remove friends who can see your location.
— **Sign out of Latitude**: Signs you out of Latitude and launches the Maps application.
— **Automatic check-ins**: Checks you in to places that you have designated.
— **Check-in notifications**: Enables notifications that suggest places to check in.
— **Manage your places**: View and modify your automatic check-ins and muted places.

- **Switch Account**: Choose a different Google account. This option only appears if you have added more than one Google account on your device.
- **Labs**: Access experimental features.
- **What’s New**: Link to Google Play Store where you can check for a Maps update.
- **About**: View information about Maps.
- **Feedback**: Display a Maps feedback form.
- **Terms, Privacy & Notices**: View information about Google Maps, including the Terms and Conditions, Privacy Policy, Legal Notices, and Web History.

---

**Media Hub**

Samsung Media Hub is your one stop for the hottest movie and TV content.

For more information, refer to “*Media Hub*” on page 116.

---

**Tip:** A shortcut to Media Hub displays on the main Home screen by default.

---

**Note:** Media Hub service requires a Media Hub account and depends on service availability.

- From a Home screen, tap ➔ **Apps** → **Media Hub**.
Memo
Create and manage text memos and use Bluetooth to send memos to paired Bluetooth devices.

Composing a Memo
1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Memo.
2. Tap New memo, compose the memo, then select Done to save.

For more information, refer to “Entering Text” on page 50.

Memo List Options
To access options while viewing the list of Memos:
1. Tap List to view your memos in a list mode. Tap an entry in the list on the left to view the memo on the right of the screen.
2. To delete one or more memos, tap Delete, select one or all memos, and tap Delete.
3. Tap Menu for the following options:
   • Sort by: Set whether to sort the memo list by Date, Title, or Color.
   • Share via: Select one or all memos, tap Share, and then tap Bluetooth, Dropbox, Email, Gmail, Messaging, or Wi-Fi Direct to send memos to another device or another person.
   • Print: Select one or all memos, tap Print, and send the memos to a Samsung printer.
   • Sync memo: Sign in to Google and use Google docs to back up your memos.
   • PIN lock: Set a PIN number to use to lock your memos.
   • Font size: Set the text font size. Options are: Tiny, Small, Normal, Large, and Huge.
4. Touch and hold a memo thumbnail or list entry to display the following options:
   • Delete: Delete the selected memo.
   • Lock/Unlock: Lock the memo or use your PIN number to remove the lock from the memo. Once you lock a memo, you have to use your PIN number to view the memo.
   • Share via: Tap Bluetooth, Dropbox, Email, Gmail, Messaging, or Wi-Fi Direct to send the memo by the selected method. For more information, refer to “Bluetooth” on page 148.
Memo Options

While viewing a Memo:

- Tap \( \text{Memo options} \) for the following options:

  - **Delete**: Delete this Memo.
  - **Color**: Choose a color for this memo.
  - **Lock/Unlock**: Lock the memo or use your PIN number to remove the lock from the memo. Once you lock a memo, you have to use your PIN number to view the memo.
  - **Print**: Send this memo to a Samsung printer.
  - **Social update**: updates the memo to selected social networking sites (SNS) such as: Facebook, Twitter, and LinkedIn.

Share via: Tap Bluetooth, Dropbox, Email, Gmail, Messaging, or Wi-Fi Direct to send the memo by the selected method. For more information, refer to “Bluetooth” on page 148.

**Messaging**

1. From a Home screen, tap \( \text{Apps} \rightarrow \text{Messaging} \).
2. Follow the on-screen prompts.

For more information, refer to “Messaging” on page 70.

**Messenger**

With Google Messenger, you can bring groups of friends together into a simple group conversation.

For more information, refer to “Messenger” on page 95.

- From a Home screen, tap \( \text{Apps} \rightarrow \text{Messenger} \).
MobileLife Organizer
Organizes your family’s calendar, family shopping list, To-Do list, and Journal entries in one place. Key features include:

- Easily access Family Members calendar on-the-go.
- Shopping List: Create a shared grocery list to prevent over purchasing or missed items.
- Calendar: Easily see your entire family’s calendar on one screen. Calendar entries are available on the device and a computer.
- To Do: Create a shared To Do list for the entire family to work on together.
- Journal: Track fun things your family does on the go and include pictures to remember the moment.

From a Home screen, tap Apps → (MobileLife Organizer).

Logging in to MobileLife
To use MobileLife Organizer with an existing account:
1. From the main application screen, enter you Email address and shared family password.
2. Tap the Shared family password field and enter the appropriate password.
3. Tap Sign in.

To create a new MobileLife Organizer account:
1. From the main application screen, tap Create an account.
2. Enter the necessary information, such as First name, Email address, Household name, and a Shared password.
3. Read the terms of use and place a check mark along side the field to confirm your acceptance of the terms.
4. Tap Done.
Create an appointment

1. From the MobileLife main screen, locate the Application menu and tap Calendar.
2. Tap Menu from the bottom of the screen.
4. Enter all Appointment Details and select household members to be included in the appointment.
   - These members can be added by entering their name, Email address, phone number, and assigning a color.
5. Tap Save.

Music Player

Play music and other audio files that you copy from your computer. For more information, refer to “Music Player” on page 128.

- From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Music Player.

Navigation

Use Google Navigation to find a destination and to get walking or driving directions.

Note: You must first create a Wi-Fi connection to use Navigation.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Navigation.
2. Tap Accept to accept the Google Maps Navigation beta message.
3. Tap ➔ in the Application bar and then tap either Driving or Walking to describe the type of directions you want.
4. Tap Map in the Application bar to see a map (Driving) or a satellite image (Walking) of your area.
5. Tap **Menu** for the following options:
   - **Route options**: Set whether directions should **Avoid highways** and **Avoid tolls**.
   - **Settings**: Display Navigation settings:
     - **Screen dimming**: Enable or disable screen dimming, which lets the screen dim between instructions to save power.
     - **Terms, privacy & notices**: View Google’s Terms and conditions, Privacy policy, and Legal notices.
   - **Help**: Display Navigation help information.

6. To find a destination, tap an option:
   - **Speak destination**: Say the name or address of your destination.
   - **Type destination**: Enter the destination.
   - **Contacts**: Choose a destination from a contact record.
   - **Starred places**: Choose destinations you have marked as favorites.
   - **Recent destinations**: Choose from recent destinations. This option is not available until a destination has been requested.

7. While navigating, tap:
   - **ROUTE AND ALTERNATES**: View information about the current route and alternate routes.
   - **Directions List**: View directions in a step-by-step list.
   - **SHOW MAP**: Return to the map view after viewing ROUTE AND ALTERNATES or the directions list.
   - **Layers**: Choose map layers to display.
Pen Memo

Create and manage memos that you create by typing text or writing with your finger or a stylus. You can even draw and save pictures as a memo. You can also share your memos.

Composing a Pen Memo

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps → Pen memo.
2. Tap New pen memo.
3. Tap the Enter title field and use the keyboard to enter a title for the memo.
4. Tap the body of the memo and then select:
   - Type the memo.
   - Write or draw with your finger or a stylus.
   - Erase writing or drawing.
   - Set Brush, Color, Pen size, Eraser size, and Theme.
   - Undo the last writing and drawing action.

Menu: To display these options:

- **Turn off voice/Turn on voice**: Enable or disable voice-guided prompts.
- **Exit navigation**: Close Navigation and discard route information.
- **Search**: Find a location.
- **Set destination**: Choose or enter a destination.
- **Settings**: Enable or disable screen dimming and view Google’s Terms and conditions, Privacy policy, and Legal notices.
- **Help**: Display Navigation help information.
5. Tap ✔️ Done to save.

For more information, refer to “Entering Text” on page 50.

**Pen Memo List Options**

While viewing the list of Memos:

1. To find a memo, tap 🔍 Search, use the keyboard to enter a key word or phrase to search for.

2. Tap 📚 List to view your memos in a list mode. Tap an entry in the list on the left to view the memo on the right of the screen.

3. To delete one or more memos, tap ✖️ Delete, select one or all memos, and tap Delete.

4. Tap Ⓟ Menu for the following options:
   - **Sort by**: Set whether to sort the memo list by Date, Title, Text first, Drawing first, or Auto tag first.
   - **Share via**: Select one or all memos, tap Share, and then select AllShare, Bluetooth, Dropbox, Email, Gmail, Google+, Messaging, Photo editor, Picasa, Social Hub, or Wi-Fi Direct to send memos to another device or another person.
   - **Export**: Tap To Gallery (drawings) or To Memo (text), select one or all memos, and tap Export.
   - **Print**: Select one or all memos, tap Print, and send the memos to a Samsung printer.
   - **Sync memo**: Sign in to Google and use Google docs to back up your memos.
   - **Auto tag settings**: Tap Enable auto tag to enable auto tagging of your memos.

5. Touch and hold a memo thumbnail or list entry to display the following options:
   - **Delete**: Delete the selected memo.
   - **Export**: Tap To Gallery (drawings) or To Memo (text), select one or all memos, and tap Export.

Redo the last writing or drawing action.
• Share via: Tap AllShare, Bluetooth, Dropbox, Email, Gmail, Google+, Messaging, Photo editor, Picasa, Social Hub, or Wi-Fi Direct to send memos to another device or another person. For more information, refer to “Bluetooth” on page 148.

Memo Options

While viewing a Memo:

1. Tap Delete to delete this memo.
2. Tap Menu for the following options:
   - Share via: Tap AllShare, Bluetooth, Dropbox, Email, Gmail, Google+, Messaging, Photo editor, Picasa, Social Hub, or Wi-Fi Direct to send memos to another device or another person.
   - Export: Tap To Gallery (drawings) or To Memo (text) to export the memo to the selected app.
   - Print: Send the memo to a Samsung printer.
   - Set as: Use this memo as a Contact photo, Home and lock screens, Home screen wallpaper, or Lock screen wallpaper image.
3. Tap the body of the memo to edit the memo. Options display for editing. For more information, refer to “Composing a Pen Memo” on page 182.

Photo Editor

To perfect any photos stored on your tablet, use Photo editor to crop, rotate, resize, adjust color and contrast, and much more.

For more information, refer to “Photo Editor” on page 114.

Play Books

Use the Play Books app to read eBooks from the Internet-based Google Play™ Books service. Google eBooks is a new way to discover, buy, and enjoy your favorite books online and offline.

You can read books online or mark them for availability offline, so you can read them when you have no Internet connection (such as on an airplane). You can also use Books as your starting point for browsing or searching for books online.
1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Play Books.

   The Google Play Books main screen displays.

   **Note:** You may be asked to create or sign on to your Google account. For more information, refer to “Setting Up Your Gmail Account” on page 78.

2. To add more books to your library, tap SHOP in the Application bar.

   A pop-up displays a link to the Google Play Terms of Service. Read the document and tap Accept.

   Browse the selection of Google eBooks, which are arranged in categories like Featured, Top Selling, Top Rated, Top Free, and many more.

3. To find a book by title or author name, tap Search on the Play Books main screen or tap SHOP ➔ Search.

4. On the Play Books main screen, tap Menu for these options:

   - **Make available offline:** Mark books to make them available offline. Tap below a book cover to mark it with a pin and then tap ✔. Just reverse this process to remove books from your device.
   - **View as list / View as carousel:** Set how you want to view your books.
   - **Refresh:** If a book in your library does not appear on your device, use this option to update the display.
   - **Accounts:** Set the account to use.
   - **Help:** Displays various Book help information. Tap Help Center to get additional Google Play Books information.

5. Tap the cover of a book to start reading.

**Reading a Book**

Once the book displays:

1. Sweep across the screen to turn the page.

2. Tap the screen to display or hide the following options.

3. Tap ☰ for a table of contents.

4. Tap Aa to set THEME (day or night), BRIGHTNESS, TYPEFACE, LINE HEIGHT, TEXT ALIGNMENT, and FONT SIZE.
5. Tap Search on the Play Books main screen or tap SHOP ➔ Search.

6. Tap Menu for these additional in-book options:
   • Original pages / Flowing text: Display the pages of the book in their original format or use your format settings.
   • About the book: Displays the Google Play description of the book.
   • Share: Share the book by using Bluetooth, Dropbox, Email, Gmail, Google+, Messaging, Social Hub, or Wi-Fi Direct.
   • Keep on device: Tap the check box to make the book available offline.
   • Add bookmark: Places a bookmark on the current page.
   • Read aloud / Stop reading aloud: Tap to let your device read the book to you.
   • Settings: Provides access to the application’s Settings page. Tap the check box to activate either of the available options such as: Download over Wi-Fi only or Automatically read aloud.

7. Touch and drag the slider at the bottom of the page to display a different page, which is indicated by the pop-up.

8. To contact customer support, report an issue, and display more Google eBooks information, from a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Play Books ➔ Menu ➔ Help.

**Play Movies**

The Play Movies app is a new application for select Android devices. Any movie you rent from the Google Play™ Store can be downloaded for offline viewing through this application. In addition, the Play Movies app can be used to stream your Google Play™ movie rentals as well as play any of your personal videos stored on your tablet.

- From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Play Movies.

For more information tap Menu ➔ Help.
Play Music

Play music and other audio files that you copy from your computer. For more information, refer to “Play Music” on page 119.

- From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Play Music.

Tip: A shortcut to Play Music displays on the main Home screen by default.

Play Store

Google Play Store provides access to downloadable applications and games to install on your device. It also allows you to provide feedback and comments about an application, or flag an application that might be incompatible with your device.

Tip: A shortcut to Play Store displays on the main Home screen by default.

1. From the Home screen, tap Play Store.

   - or -

   From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Play Store.

   If you are not already logged in with your Google account, the Add a Google Account screen displays.

   - Tap Existing, if you already have a Google account, or New to create a Google account.

   For more information, refer to “Setting Up Your Gmail Account” on page 78.

2. The first time you open Play Store, read the Google Play™ Terms of Service and then tap Accept to continue.

3. To browse for items to install, tap Apps, Games, Music, Books, or Movies. Tap a tab, such as CATEGORIES, FEATURED, TOP PAID, or TOP FREE to refine your search.

4. To get help for using Google Play™, tap Menu ➔ Help.
Updates to Downloaded Apps

You can check for new versions of applications by visiting the Google Play Store. Items that have a new version available will say Update.

You can also select apps that you would like to be updated automatically. To do this:

1. From the Home screen, tap Play Store.
2. Tap Installed Apps.
3. Select the Installed tab to list the Play Store apps installed on your device.
   Update is displayed if there is an update available for the app.
4. Tap an app and then select Allow automatic updating to enable automatic updating.
5. Tap Open to open the app on your device.
6. Tap Update to update the app on your device.

Managing Downloads

Files, apps, and other items you download in Internet, Gmail, Email, or in other ways, are stored on your tablet’s internal storage. You can use the Downloads app to view, reopen, or delete what you have downloaded.

To manage the demands on their networks or to help you avoid unexpected charges, some mobile networks place restrictions on the size of the files you can download. When you are connected to such networks, and you try to download an oversized-file, you are asked or required to delay downloading the file until the next time you are connected to a Wi-Fi network. At that time, the download resumes automatically. The Downloads app can also be used to view and manage these queued files.

Downloaded files are stored in the Download directory in your tablet’s internal storage. You can view and copy files from this directory when connected to a computer with a USB cable.
Uninstalling an App

Apps come pre-installed on your device and you can download additional apps from Google Play. If you decide to, you can uninstall apps you downloaded from Google Play and other sources.

There are several ways to uninstall an app:

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings ➔ Applications.
2. Tap the Downloaded tab.
3. Tap the app you want to uninstall.
4. Tap the Uninstall button.
   A pop-up displays the message This application will be uninstalled.
5. Tap OK to confirm you want to uninstall the app.

You can also use Google Play to uninstall apps you downloaded from there (see “Play Store” on page 187).

To uninstall an app from the Apps screen:

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps.
2. Tap Menu ➔ Downloaded applications.
   The Downloaded applications screen displays.
3. Tap Menu ➔ Uninstall. A appears on Apps that can be uninstalled.
4. Tap an app’s icon and then tap OK to uninstall and remove the app from your tablet.

Note: You cannot uninstall the apps that are included with Android. You can only uninstall the apps you have downloaded.
**Pro Apps**

Provides access to compatible productivity tools. These productivity packs can be accessed from anywhere.

**Note:** Access to these applications and packs requires you to have an active Google account and are logged in prior to connection.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps → Pro Apps**.
2. Select an application and follow the on-screen download and installation instructions.

**Pulse**

Pulse News gives you news visually in bite-sized pieces. Each article is a small square filled with the headline and an associated image. Pulse incorporates colorful panning story bars and fills them with content from your favorite websites.

- From a Home screen, tap **Apps → Pulse**.

The Pulse main menu displays.

---

**Quickoffice HD**

The Quickoffice® application allows you to create and save Microsoft Word, Excel, and Powerpoint documents. You can also view existing PDFs.

**To access the Quickoffice:**

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps → Quickoffice HD**.
   
   The Quickoffice Register your Software screen displays.

2. Tap the **E-mail Address** field and use the keyboard to enter your E-mail address. Tap **Please don't ask me again**, if you do not want to register later, and then tap **Register Now**.
   – or –

   Tap **Register Later**, if you are not ready to register at this time. The Quickoffice screen is displayed.

3. Tap **Internal Storage** to display the folders and files located on your device.

4. Tap **Recent Documents** to view the documents you have recently updated.

6. To find a memo, tap **Search**, use the keyboard to enter a key word or phrase to search for, and tap ![search icon] to start the search. The Search Results screen displays.

7. To save your documents to a remote account, tap ![cloud icon] **Add remote account**, tap an account, and sign in. Tap **Learn more about ...** to read more about the selected account.

8. Tap **Menu** for these additional options:
   - **Create folder**: Tap the **New folder name** field and use the keyboard to name the folder. Tap **Create** to add the folder to selected folder.
   - **Sort**: Sort files or folders by Name, Type, Size, or Date.
   - **Updates**: Check for updates for Quickoffice.
   - **Registration**: If you tapped **Register Later** when you signed in, use this option and tap **Register Now**.
   - **About**: Displays information about the Quickoffice app.
   - **Help**: Displays the Quickoffice Help Guide and answers to frequently asked questions. You can also open a support ticket.

9. Tap a document to open it. Touch and hold a document and drag it to one of the following icons:
   - **Rename to**: Use the keyboard to rename the document and tap **Rename**.
   - **Send**: Tap **AllShare**, **Bluetooth**, **Dropbox**, **Email**, **Gmail**, **Google+**, **Messaging**, **Photo editor** (Picture), **Picasa** (Picture), **Social Hub**, **Wi-Fi Direct**, or **YouTube** (for Video) to send your document.
10. Touch and drag a document to a new folder. Tap **Copy** to or **Move to** on the Action pop-up to copy or move the document to the highlighted folder.

**Search**

Search the Web using the Google™ search engine.

1. From the Home screen, tap **Apps ➔ Search**.
2. Use the keyboard to enter search criteria to display matching searches.
   – or –
   Tap **Microphone** and speak the search criteria slowly and clearly. Google searches for the information and displays results.
   Suggestions display below the text entry area.
3. Tap a suggestion to search for that term. A browser window displays the search results.

**Settings**

Configure your device to your preferences.

For more information, refer to “Settings” on page 201.

- From a Home screen, tap **Apps ➔ Settings**.

**SimCity Deluxe HD**

SimCity® is a critically acclaimed city-building simulation video game.

- From a Home screen, tap **Apps ➔ SimCity Deluxe HD**.

**Delete**: Tap **OK** to delete the document.
Slacker Radio

Slacker offers free, internet radio for mobile devices.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Slacker Radio.

Important! You must register and create a free account prior to using this service.

2. Read the on-screen legal disclaimer and tap OK.
3. If prompted, enter your Email address and password.
   — or —
   Tap Create Account if you have not created an account.

Begin selecting the music you want to listen to by selecting from the available on-screen categories.

Social Hub

Access your social networks, like Facebook, Twitter, and LinkedIn, and your email all in one place.

Tip: A shortcut to Social Hub appears on the main Home screen by default.

1. From the Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Social Hub.
   The Welcome to Social Hub screen displays.
2. Tap Set up now to add an account.
   — or —
   Tap Set up later to skip adding an account and display the Social Hub Feeds screen.
3. Tap the Feeds tab to display your social network feeds or tap the Messages tab to display your email and SNS messages.
Add an Account

1. Tap Add account.
   The Add account screen displays.

2. Tap the account you want to add and then enter the required information, such as email address and password.
   The added account now appears on the Social Hub Accounts screen with any other accounts.

3. Select an account entry to start the application.

Update Your Status

1. Tap the Feeds tab.

2. Tap Status update and use the keypad to enter your status.

3. Tap Photo to upload a picture or video, or take a picture or capture a video to upload.

4. Tap Update to post your status and photos.

Social Hub Messages Options

1. Tap the Messages tab.

2. Tap Menu.
   The following options display:
   - Delete: Tap the check box to select each message to delete, or select Select all, then tap Delete.
   - Accounts: Lists all accounts accessed by Social Hub.
     - Tap Add account to add another account.
     - Tap Remove account and tap the check box next to each account you want to delete, then tap Delete.
   - Mark as unread: Tap the check box to select each message to mark as unread, then select Mark.
   - List by: Set how you want to list messages. Options are: Date (Most recent), Date (Oldest), or Sender.
**T-Mobile TV**

T-Mobile TV is an application that allows you to get live TV and Video on Demand.

- From the Home screen, tap Apps ➔ T-Mobile TV.

For more information, refer to “T-Mobile TV” on page 118.

**Talk**

Use Google Talk to chat with other Google Talk users.

For more information, refer to “Google Talk” on page 91.

- From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Talk.

**Task Manager**

View and manage active applications on your device.

For more information, refer to “Task Manager” on page 15.

**To launch Task Manager:**

- From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Task manager.

  – or –

  Tap Navigation and then tap Task manager.

To quickly display the Task manager pop-up:

- Touch and hold Home.

  – or –

  From any screen, tap Mini App Tray at the bottom, center of the screen and then tap Task manager.

The Task manager pop-up displays.

**TegraZone Games**

TegraZone® Games is an Android app for your NVIDIA® Tegra™-powered mobile device, you can easily find games that are optimized to exploit the full potential of your device’s built-in Tegra mobile processor. Discover unique, premium games for Android that deliver more visually-stunning graphics and smoother gameplay, so you can get the most out of your Tegra-powered mobile device.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ TegraZone Games.

2. Follow the on-screen instructions.
**Video Player**

View and manage videos stored on your tablet. For more information, refer to “Video Player” on page 106.

From a Home screen, tap Apps & Video Player.

**World Clock**

View the date and time in any time zone.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps & World clock.
   - A map of the world displays with the locations you have added flagged.

2. Tap Add to add a city to display.
   - A list of world cities displays in landscape mode.

3. Scroll through the list and tap the city you want to add.

**Tip:** Tap the first letter of the city’s name, to the right of the list, to find the city more quickly.

- or -

In portrait or landscape mode, tap and turn the globe to locate a city and tap the city you want to add.

A pop-up displays the city name, the current time and date there, and the GMT offset.

4. Tap the on the pop-up to add the city.

5. Tap Reorder to change the order of the cities. Tap the grid on an entry and drag the entry to a new position in the list. Tap Done to change the order.

6. Tap Remove to delete entries. Tap the box to check the cities you want to delete (a green check mark displays), then tap Remove.

7. Touch and hold an entry to remove it or to set the DST settings, which enable or disable Daylight Savings Time adjustments.
Yahoo! Finance

Stay on top of the markets with the Yahoo! Finance app for Android devices. Get real-time quotes, follow the market, or check out a particular stock. View headline news, top stories, and videos from Tech Ticker. Yahoo! Finance lets you keep up with the market movers from your Android phone.

To add the Yahoo! Finance widget to a Home screen, see “Adding Widgets to a Home screen” on page 34.

Adding Your First Stock

To add your first stock:

1. From a Home screen, tap the Yahoo! Finance widget. The Yahoo! Finance main screen displays with Samsung and Yahoo stocks listed by default.

2. Tap Add.

3. Type in a stock name and select an entry in the list of stocks that is displayed.

4. The Yahoo! Finance widget displays with information about the stock just added.

Managing Stocks

Once you add a stock, there are additional Yahoo! Finance options you can use to add more stocks and set up how they are displayed and refreshed.

1. From a Home screen, tap an entry in the Yahoo! Finance widget. Information about the stock displays.

2. Tap Refresh to update the information.

3. Tap Add to add another stock. For more information, refer to “Adding Your First Stock” on page 197.

4. Tap Menu to display the following options:
   - Delete: Tap to delete the stock being displayed.
   - Change order: Displays your stocks list. Tap and drag stocks to change the order in which they are displayed.
   - Search: Tap to search for a new stock.
   - Settings: Displays the following option:
Auto refresh: Choose a time interval for automatic refreshing of stock information. The choices are: None, Every 30 minutes, Every 1 hour, and Every 3 hours. When the setting is None, tap the refresh icon on the Yahoo! Finance widget to update stock information.

5. Under the My Stocks tab, tap a stock entry to display the full stock information screen.

6. Tap the Major indices tab to display a summary of the performance of major groupings of stocks, classified by the exchange on which they trade.

7. Tap the Currencies tab to display the currency exchange rate for various currencies.

Additional Options

There are more options available from the full stock information screen.

1. From a Home screen, tap the Yahoo! Finance widget. The full stock information screen for one of your stocks displays.

2. If you have added more than one stock, tap a heading bar to display the full stock information screen for the stock.

3. Near the center of the screen, tap 1d (1 day), 5d (5 days), 1m (1 month), 3m (3 months), 6m (6 months), or 1y (1 year) to view a stock performance graph for the requested period.

4. At the bottom, right of the screen, tap Y! More Information to link to the Yahoo! Finance website.

5. At the bottom of the screen, tap Quotes delayed to read about real-time exchange quotes and access other Yahoo! Finance online options, such as Top Stories and a currency converter.
YouTube
View and upload YouTube videos right from your device.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ YouTube.
2. Tap the HOME tab to return to the main YouTube page.
3. Tap the BROWSE tab to browse videos by categories like Comedy, Education, Music, and so on. Tap the desired category to display video thumbnails.
4. Tap the ACCOUNT tab to choose which Google account you would like to use or add an account. Once you are signed in, tap ACCOUNT to display your subscriptions, see your favorites, see your watch later list, manage your playlists, or upload a video.
5. Tap Search YouTube and use the keyboard to enter a keyword or phrase to find a YouTube video.
6. While browsing, tap Menu for these options:
   - Sign in / Sign out: Sign in, sign out, or add an account. You may have to sign in to use certain options.
   - Settings: Configure display and search settings and view information about the application.
   - Help: Display YouTube help information.
   - Feedback: Display a YouTube feedback form.
7. Tap a video thumbnail to view the video.

Options While Viewing a Video
Use these options while viewing a video:

1. Tap Add to, which lets you add the video to your watch later list or your favorites, or add a new playlist.
2. Tap Share (in landscape mode) or tap Menu ➔ Share (in portrait mode) to use Wi-Fi Direct, Messaging, Google+, Social Hub, Dropbox, Bluetooth, Email, or Gmail to send the video’s URL.
3. Tap Menu for these options:
   - Add YouTube TV: Allows you to add YouTube TV functionality to your portable devices by pairing it with a supported device. This provide control of the YouTube TV directly from your device.
   - Copy URL: Copy the URL of the video to the clipboard. For more information, refer to “Copying Fields or Text” on page 138.
   - Flag: Flag the video for YouTube review.

Note: YouTube TV functionality may not initially appear as an available option and may require the application be updated via the Google Play store.
- **Settings**: Configure display and search settings and view information about the application.
- **Help**: Display YouTube help information.
- **Feedback**: Display a YouTube feedback form.

**Zinio**

Launches a digital magazine reader. Zinio has transformed your favorite print magazines into digital format.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps → (Zinio).
2. Tap **Sign in** if you already have an account or tap **Join Zinio** to continue.
3. Follow the on-screen prompts.
Section 10: Settings

This section explains Settings for customizing your device.

Accessing Settings

- From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings.
- or –
  From any screen, tap the Time in the System Bar, then tap Settings. For more information, refer to “Quick Settings” on page 30.

The Settings screen displays.

The Settings Screen

The Settings screen has tabs on the left side of the screen. Information related to the tabs displays on the right side of the screen. There are four major groups of settings: Wireless and network, Device, Personal, and System.

Wireless and Network

Control your device’s wireless connections.

Wi-Fi

Your device supports Wi-Fi a/b/g/n. Use Wi-Fi settings to manage your device’s Wi-Fi connections.

For more information about using your device’s Wi-Fi features, see “Wi-Fi” on page 144.

Turning Wi-Fi On or Off

When you turn Wi-Fi service on, your device automatically searches for available, in-range Wireless Access Points (WAPs).

- From any Home screen, tap the time, then tap Wi-Fi from the Quick Settings menu.
  For more information, refer to “Quick Settings” on page 30.
- or –
  From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings.
  On the Wi-Fi tab, tap the OFF / ON icon to turn Wi-Fi on or off.
**Add Wi-Fi Network**

To open a dialog where you can add a Wi-Fi network by entering its Network SSID (the name it broadcasts), security type, and other properties:

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps ➔ Settings ➔ Wi-Fi**, and then select **Add network**.
2. Use the keyboard to enter **Network SSID**.
3. Tap the **Security** field and then touch a security type.

**Note:** Depending on the Security protocol used by the WAP, additional network information may be required, such as a Password.

4. If necessary, tap **Password** and enter the password or hex key.
5. Select **Save**.

---

**Advanced Settings**

Set up and manage wireless access points.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps ➔ Settings ➔ Wi-Fi**.
2. Tap **Menu ➔ Advanced**.

The following options display:

- **Network notification**: Have your device alert you to new Wireless Access Points (WAPs). Tap **Network notification** to turn notifications On or Off. When enabled, a check mark appears in the check box.
- **Keep Wi-Fi on during sleep**: Specify when to disconnect from Wi-Fi. Option are: Always, Only when plugged in, or Never.
- **MAC address**: View your device’s MAC address, required when connecting to some secured networks (not configurable).
- **IP address**: View your device’s IP address.
**Bluetooth**

Use Bluetooth settings to manage Bluetooth connections, set your device’s name, and control your device’s visibility.

**Turning Bluetooth On or Off**

- From any Home screen, touch the time, then tap **Bluetooth** from the Quick Settings menu.

  For more information, refer to “Quick Settings” on page 30.

  – or –

  From a Home screen, tap **Apps ➔ Settings**. On the Bluetooth tab, tap the **OFF / ON** icon to turn Bluetooth on or off.

  For more information about using Bluetooth to exchange information with other Bluetooth devices, see “Bluetooth” on page 148.

**Additional Bluetooth Settings**

When Bluetooth is on, additional settings are available.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps ➔ Settings ➔ Bluetooth**.

2. Tap **Scan for devices** to scan for nearby discoverable devices. After searching, tap a device to pair with it.

   For more information, refer to “Pairing with a Bluetooth Device” on page 149.

3. Tap **Menu** and select a Bluetooth setting to configure:

   - **Device name**: Your device’s default name displays on screen. Tap to change the device name. Available when Bluetooth is turned On.

   - **Visible time-out**: Use this setting to control when to automatically turn off the Discoverable option: 2 minutes, 5 minutes, 1 hour, or **Never timeout**.

   - **Show received files**: Show the list of files received by using Bluetooth.
**Data Usage**

From this screen you can view the Wi-Fi or Ethernet data usage.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings ➔ Data usage.

2. Tap the OFF / ON icon to turn the Mobile data on or off.

**To set a mobile data limit:**

1. Tap the OFF / ON icon to turn the Mobile data on or off.

2. Place a check mark in the Set mobile data limit field.

3. Read the on-screen disclaimer info and tap OK.

4. Touch and drag the far right ends of the red or orange horizontal lines to manually adjust both the Warning and Maximum data limits.

5. Touch and drag the bottom grey vertical lines to adjust the time frames.

6. Tap the Data usage cycle button and select either the current cycle or define your own by selecting Change cycle.

7. Tap Menu and then select from the available on-screen options:

   - **Data roaming** allows you to connect to your service provider’s partner networks and access data services when you are out of your service providers area of coverage. For more information, refer to “Data Roaming” on page 208.

   - **Restrict background data** prevents background data usage. This can help prevent over usage of your data minutes.

   - **Show Wi-Fi usage** activates an additional Wi-Fi tab that shows you your Wi-Fi data usage.

---

*Note:* Data is measured by your device. Your service provider may account for data usage differently.
More Settings
This tab displays additional wireless and network information.

- From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings ➔ More ...

Options display for Airplane mode, Kies via Wi-Fi, VPN, Tethering and portable hotspot, and Wi-Fi Direct.

Airplane Mode
Airplane mode allows you to use many of your tablet’s features, such as Camera, Games, and more, when you are in an airplane or in any other area where accessing data is prohibited.

Important! When your tablet is in Airplane Mode, it cannot access online information or applications.

- Press and hold the Power button then select Airplane mode.
  – or –
  From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings ➔ More ...
  ➔ Airplane mode, tap the check box, and then select OK to turn on Airplane mode.

Kies via Wi-Fi
Wi-Fi configuration and usage by Kies Air.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings ➔ More ...
   ➔ Kies via Wi-Fi.

2. Select the source of the Wi-Fi connection for Kies air.

VPN
The VPN settings menu allows you to set up and manage Virtual Private Networks (VPNs).

Important! Before you can use a VPN you must establish and configure one.
Adding a VPN

Before you add a VPN you must determine which VPN protocol to use: PPTP, L2TP/IPSec PSK, L2TP/IPSec RSA, IPSec Xauth PSK, IPSec Xauth RSA, IPSec Hybrid RSA.

Note: You must also set a screen unlock PIN or password before you can use credential storage. For more information, refer to “Screen Lock” on page 222.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings ➔ More ... ➔ VPN.
2. Tap Add VPN network.
3. In the form that appears, fill in the information provided by your network administrator.
4. Tap Save to save your VPN settings.

Connecting To a VPN

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings ➔ More ... ➔ VPN.
2. Tap the VPN to which you want to connect.
3. In the pop-up that opens, enter any requested credentials.
4. Tap Connect.

Edit a VPN

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings ➔ More ... ➔ VPN.
2. Touch and hold the VPN that you want to edit.
3. In the pop-up that opens, touch Edit network.
4. Make the desired VPN setting changes.
5. Touch Save.

Delete a VPN

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings ➔ More ... ➔ VPN.
2. Touch and hold the VPN that you want to delete.
3. In the pop-up that opens, touch Delete network.
**Tethering and Portable hotspot**

The Tethering option allows you to share your device’s mobile data connection via a direct USB connection between your device and computer.

The Portable hotspot feature allows you to turn your device into a Wi-Fi hotspot. The feature works best when used in conjunction with HSPA+ (4G) data services (although 3G service can also be used).

For more information, see “Tethering” on page 151 or see “Portable Wi-Fi Hotspot” on page 151.

---

**Wi-Fi Direct Settings**

You can configure your device to connect directly with other Wi-Fi capable devices. This is an easy way to transfer data between devices. These devices must be enabled for Wi-Fi Direct communication. This connection is direct and not via a hot spot or WAP.

**Note:** Activating this feature will disconnect your current Wi-Fi network connection.

1. From a Home screen, tap ![Apps](apps_icon) ➔ ![Settings](settings_icon) ➔ More ... ➔ Wi-Fi Direct.

2. Tap the OFF / ON icon to turn Wi-Fi Direct on. Your device begins to search for other devices enabled with Wi-Fi direct connections.

3. Tap **Scan** and select the single device name to begin the connection process to another Wi-Fi Direct compatible device.

4. When scanning is complete, touch a device name to begin the connection process to another Wi-Fi Direct compatible device.
Note: The target device must also have Wi-Fi Direct service active and running before it is detected by your device.

5. Tap Done. The direct connection is then established.
6. When prompted to complete the connection, tap OK. The status field now reads “Connected” and your connected device is listed within the Wi-Fi Direct devices listing.

For more information, refer to “Wi-Fi Direct” on page 146.

**Using Mobile networks**

Before you use applications such as Google Maps and find your location or search for places of interest, you must enable the Mobile networks options.

- From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings ➔ More ... ➔ Mobile networks.

The following options display:

**Use packet data**

Allows you to activate data usage on your device.

- From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings ➔ More ... ➔ Mobile networks ➔ Use packet data.

**Data Roaming**

Data roaming allows you to connect to your service provider’s partner networks and access data services when you are out of your service providers area of coverage.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings ➔ More ... ➔ Mobile networks.
2. Tap Data roaming to connect to data services while roaming outside your network.
   - or –
   Tap Data roaming again to remove the green check mark and deactivate the feature.

**Access Point Names**

To access a wireless access point:

- From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings ➔ More ... ➔ Mobile networks ➔ Access Point Names.

A list of the Access point names display. The active access point displays a bright green, filled circle to the right of the name.
**Network mode**

You can configure your phone to either manually detect and use either a 2G (GSM) or 3G (WCDMA) data network connection.

- From a Home screen, tap 📱 Apps ➔ 📲 Settings ➔ More ... ➔ Mobile networks ➔ Network mode.

**Using the 4G Network**

To confirm you are always using the fastest possible connection, the phone has an automatic detection method where it finds both the fastest and most stable connection/communication method. This phone is capable of using either 4G/3G services for this connection.

**Note:** WCDMA is only available on the 4G network.

1. From a Home screen, tap 📱 Apps ➔ 📲 Settings ➔ More ... ➔ Mobile networks ➔ Network mode.
2. Tap GSM/WCDMA (Auto mode). A check mark displays next to this option to indicate that it is active. This is the default mode for this phone.

**Using the 2G (EDGE) Network**

If you are not using applications that require the 3G network speed (any application that accesses the network or uses a browser), using the 2G network saves battery life.

1. From a Home screen, tap 📱 Apps ➔ 📲 Settings ➔ More ... ➔ Mobile networks ➔ Network mode.
2. Tap GSM only. A check mark displays next to this option to indicate that it is active.

**Note:** Connecting to 2G networks slows the data transfer speed and time.

**Using the 3G Network**

If you are using applications that require the 3G network speed, follow these instructions to connect to the 3G network.

1. From a Home screen, tap 📱 Apps ➔ 📲 Settings ➔ More ... ➔ Mobile networks ➔ Network mode.
2. Tap WCDMA only. A check mark displays next to this option to indicate that it is active.
Network Operators

Using this feature you can view the current network connection. You can also scan and select a network operator manually, or set the network selection to Automatic.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings ➔ More ... ➔ Mobile networks.
2. Tap Network operators. The current network connection displays at the bottom of the list.

Important! You must deactivate data service prior to searching for an available network.

3. Tap Search now to manually search for a network.
4. Tap Select automatically to automatically select a network connection.

Note: Connecting to 2G networks slows the data transfer speed and time.

Default Setup Options

Your phone default is set to Automatic (to automatically search for an available network. You can set this option to Manual to select a network each time you connect.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings ➔ More ... ➔ Mobile networks ➔ Network operators.
2. Tap Default setup.
3. Tap Manual to locate and connect to a network manually.
   – or –
   Tap Automatic to allow the device to automatically select a network.
Sound Settings

General Volume
Set the volume level for all types of sounds.

Note: You can only set volume when Silent Mode is disabled.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings ➔ Sound ➔ Volume.
2. Touch and drag the sliders to set the volume for:
   - Music, video, games, and other media: Sounds made by music apps, video apps, and more.
   - Notifications: Sounds for alerts to new messages and other events.
   - System: Application sounds and other sounds made by your device.

Tip: You can also set System volume from the Home screen by pressing the Volume Key.

3. Tap OK to save your settings.

Vibration Intensity
Set the intensity of vibration for notifications and screen touch feedback.
1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings ➔ Sound.
2. Tap Vibration intensity.
3. Touch and drag the Notification or Vibrate on screen tap slider to set the vibration intensity.
4. Tap OK to save your settings.

Setting a Default Notification
Select a default ringtone for message, alarm, and other notifications.
1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings ➔ Sound ➔ Default notifications.
2. Tap a ringtone to hear a sample and select it.
3. Tap OK to save the setting.
**Setting up Sound and Vibration**

Set your tablet to make sounds and vibrate:

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings ➔ Sound ➔ Sound and vibration.
2. Tap the check box to turn on Sound and vibration mode.
   
   A check mark 🆕 appears in the check box when Sound and vibration mode is On.

**Audible System Tone Settings**

These options are used when you use the dialing pad, make a screen selection, lock your screen, or tap the screen. Each time you press a key or make a selection the selected tone sounds. You can activate or deactivate both touch and screen lock sounds.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings ➔ Sound.
2. Tap Touch sounds to activate a tone when you touch the screen. A check mark displayed next to this feature indicates active status. When enabled, a check mark 🆕 appears in the check box.
   
   Tap Screen lock sound to activate a tone when you use the Lock screen. A check mark displayed next to this feature indicates active status. When enabled, a check mark 🆕 appears in the check box.
3. Tap Vibrate on screen tap to enable or disable vibration when you touch or tap the screen.
   
   When enabled, a check mark 🆕 appears in the check box. When Vibrate on screen tap is enabled, the device vibrates to indicate screen touches and other interactions.
Display Settings

In this menu, you can change various settings for the display such as the font, orientation, pop-up notifications, puzzle lock feature, animation, brightness, screen timeout, and power saving mode.

Adjusting the Screen Display

To set the Home Screen and Lock Screen Wallpaper:
You can choose a picture to display on the Home Screen or Lock screen. Choose from preloaded wallpaper images or select a photo you have downloaded or taken with the Camera.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings ➔ Display.
2. Tap Home screen wallpaper or Lock screen wallpaper.
   The Select wallpaper from screen displays the following options: Gallery, Live wallpapers, and Wallpapers.

For more information, refer to “Wallpapers” on page 39.

To show help text on the lock screen:
1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings ➔ Display.
2. Tap Help text. When enabled, a check mark appears in the check box.

Adjusting the General Display Features

Brightness

Set the default screen brightness.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings ➔ Display ➔ Brightness.
2. Touch and drag the slider to set the brightness or touch Automatic brightness.
3. Tap OK to save the setting.

Adjusting the Screen Mode

These settings change how the device displays on-screen colors and levels. Each preset has its own display properties.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings ➔ Display ➔ Screen mode.
3. Tap OK to save the new preset setting.
**Auto-Rotate Screen**

When this option is checked, the screen orientation changes when you rotate the device. When this option is not checked, the screen orientation locks in the current orientation (landscape or portrait) and the orientation does not change when you rotate the device.

1. From a Home screen, tap `Apps ➔ Settings ➔ Display`.
2. Tap **Auto-rotate screen** to enable or disable the auto-rotate feature.

**Tip:** Tap the Time in the System Bar to display the Quick Settings pop-up. Tap **Screen rotation** to enable or disable the auto-rotate feature. For more information, refer to “Quick Settings” on page 30.

---

**Quick Launch**

The Quick Launch feature allows you to set multifunctional softkey to open applications.

1. From a Home screen, tap `Apps ➔ Settings ➔ Display`.
2. Tap **Quick launch**.
3. Tap **None**, **Screen capture**, **Applications**, **Search**, or **Camera**.

If you choose **Screen capture**, touch the softkey to capture an image of the current screen and edit the image. Touch and hold to capture and add an image of the current screen to the clipboard.

The screen image is saved in the `/Root/Pictures/Screenshots` folder. For more information, refer to “Files” on page 167.
Screen Timeout

Set the length of delay between the last key press or screen touch and the automatic screen timeout (dim and lock).

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings ➔ Display.

2. Tap Screen timeout and select the screen delay time. The screen delays shutting off after inactivity for the selected period of time.

   - Selections are: 15 seconds, 30 seconds, 1 minute, 2 minutes, 5 minutes, and 10 minutes.

Font Style and Size

Set the font for screen displays and the size you want it to display.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings ➔ Display.

2. Tap Font style then select a font.

   - Selections are: Default font, Choco cooky, Helvetica S, Rosemary, or Get fonts online. Tap Get fonts online to download additional fonts.

3. Tap Font size and select a font size.

Auto Adjust Screen Power

When enabled, your device automatically analyzes the screen and adjusts the brightness to conserve battery power.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings ➔ Display.

2. Tap Auto adjust screen power to enable or disable the mode. When enabled, a check mark appears in the check box.

Power Saving Mode

This feature allows you both automatically set the phone to use a power saving mode and configure additional power saving options manually, all in an effort to conserve battery power. When enabled, your device automatically analyzes the screen and adjusts the brightness to conserve battery power.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings ➔ Power saving.

2. Tap Custom power saving to enable or disable the mode. When enabled, a check mark appears in the check box.

3. Tap Custom power saving settings to refine your power saving settings.
4. Tap **Power saving starts at** to set when power saving starts.
   - Options are: 10%, 20%, 30%, 40%, or 50% battery power.
   - Check the appropriate box to turn off Wi-Fi, Bluetooth, GPS, Sync, or Scan.
   - Tap **Brightness** to adjust screen brightness. Tap the second Brightness option to set the brightness to 10, 30, 50, 70, or 100 percent.

5. Tap **Screen timeout** to set the length of delay between the last key press or screen touch and the automatic screen timeout (dim and lock).

6. Tap ☑ **OK** to save your settings.

7. Tap **Learn about power saving** to display more information about saving power.

---

**Storage**

From this menu you can view the device memory.

**Device Memory**

- From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings ➔ **Storage**.

  The Device memory displays as Total space, Apps, Pictures, videos, Audio (music, ringtones, podcasts, etc.), Downloads, Miscellaneous files, and Available space.

**Battery**

This option allows you to view a list of those components using battery power. The amount of time the battery was used also displays. Battery usage displays in percentages per application.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings ➔ **Battery**.

   The battery level displays in percentage. The amount of time the battery was used also displays. Battery usage displays in percentages per application.
2. From the upper-right tap Refresh to update the list.
   – or –
   Tap an entry to view more detailed information.

3. Tap Screen or Android System to view how the display
   and the Android system are affecting battery use.

Note: Other applications may be running that affect battery
use.

Applications
You can download and install applications from Google Play
or create applications using the Android SDK and install them
on your device. Use Applications settings to manage
applications.

Warning! Because this device can be configured with system
software not provided by or supported by Google or
any other company, end-users operate these devices
at their own risk.

This menu allows you to manage installed applications. You
can view and control currently running services, or use the
device for application development.
You can also view the amount of memory or resources used
as well as the remaining memory and resources for each of
the applications on your phone and clear the data, cache, or
defaults.

Memory Usage
See how memory is being used by Downloaded or Running
applications.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings ➔ Applications.

2. Tap the Downloaded or Running tabs to display memory
   usage for that category of applications.
   The graph at the bottom of the Downloaded tab shows
   used and free device memory. The graph at the bottom
   of the Running tab shows used and free RAM.
Downloaded Apps
Displays apps you have downloaded onto your device.
1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings ➔ Applications.
2. Tap Downloaded to view a list of all the downloaded applications on your device.
3. To switch the order of the lists displayed in the Downloaded tabs, tap Menu ➔ Sort by size or Sort by name.
4. Tap an application to view and update information about the application, including memory usage, default settings, and permissions. The following options are displayed:
   • Force stop: Stops an app that is misbehaving. Restart your device if stopping an app, process, or service causes your device to stop working correctly.
   • Uninstall: Deletes the application from the tablet.
   • Clear data: Clears application data from memory.
   • Clear cache: If the app stores data in a temporary area of the device's memory, and the amount of information stored is displayed, touch this button to clearing the temporary storage.
   • Clear defaults: If you have configured an app to launch certain file types by default, clear that setting.
   • Permissions: Lists the kinds of information about your device and data to which the app has access.

Uninstalling Third-party Applications
**Important!** You must have downloaded applications installed to use this feature.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings ➔ Applications.
2. Tap the Downloaded tab and select your desired application.
3. Tap Uninstall (from within the top area of the Application info page).
4. At the prompt, tap OK to uninstall the application.
5. Select a reason for uninstalling the application, then tap OK.
Running Services

To view and control services running on your device:

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings ➔ Applications.
2. Tap the Running tab.
   All the applications that are currently running on the device display.
3. Tap Show cached processes to display all the cached processes that are running.
4. Tap Show services in use to switch back.
5. Select one of the applications to view application information.
   The following options display:
   • Stop: Stops the application from running on the device. This is usually done prior to uninstalling the application.

   Warning! Not all services can be stopped. Stopping services may have undesirable consequences on the application or Android System.

   • Report: Report failure and other application information.

Note: Options vary by application.

Storage Used

This option allows you to view a list (on the current tab) of current applications as sorted by size.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings ➔ Applications.
2. Tap the All tab to display all available applications.
3. Tap Menu ➔ Sort by size to change the current list to show items based on the amount of storage they occupy.
Accounts and Synchronization
Set up and manage accounts, including your Google and email accounts.

To activate Accounts and sync
1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings ➔ Accounts and sync.
2. Tap the Accounts and sync icon to turn the feature on.

To deactivate Accounts and sync
1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings ➔ Accounts and sync.
2. Tap the Accounts and sync icon again to turn the feature off.

Adding an Account
1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings ➔ Accounts and sync.
2. Tap Add account.
3. Select one of the account types.
4. Use the keyboard and follow the prompts to enter your credentials and set up the account.

Tip: For more information about the types of accounts that you can add, see “Accounts” on page 60.

Removing an Account
Important! Removing an account also deletes all of its messages, contacts, and other data from the device.
1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings ➔ Accounts and sync.
2. Tap an account to display its settings.
3. Tap Remove account ➔ Remove account at the prompt to remove the account and delete all its messages, contacts, and other data.
**Synchronizing All Accounts**
Select the items you want to synchronize on your account such as Books, Calendar, Contacts, and more.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings ➔ Accounts and sync.
2. Tap Sync all to synchronize all your accounts. Tap Cancel sync to stop the synchronization.
3. On the Auto-sync field, tap the OFF / ON icon to turn Auto-sync on or off, which controls whether changes you make to information on your device or on the web are automatically synced with each other.

**Data and Synchronization**

To sync account information manually:

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings ➔ Accounts and sync.
2. Tap an account to display its settings.
3. Tap Sync now to synchronize all data for the selected account.

   – or –

   Under Data and synchronization, tap the account data to synchronize it, such as, Calendar, Contacts, etc...

**Location Services**
You value your privacy. So, by default, your device only acquires your location when you allow it. To use Location-Based Services, you must first enable location services on your device.

**Use Wireless Networks**
Before you use applications such as Google Maps and find your location or search for places of interest, you must enable the Use wireless networks option or enable the GPS satellites.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings ➔ Location services.
2. Tap Use wireless networks to enable location information using the wireless network.

**Use GPS Satellites**

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings ➔ Location services.
2. Tap Use GPS satellites to enable the GPS satellite.
Location and Google Search

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings ➔ Location services.
2. Touch Location and Google search to use your location data for improved Google Search results and other Google services.

Security

This menu contains features that allows you to configure the device's security parameters.

Screen Unlock Pattern Overview

To secure data and limit phone access, set the phone to require a screen unlock pattern each time you turn on the device, or every time the phone wakes up from sleep mode (when the screen automatically turns off).

The Screen lock menu allows to choose from a variety of locking features such as: Swipe, Pattern, PIN, Password, and None.

Screen Lock

Choose settings for unlocking your screen. For more information about using the lock and unlock features, see “Securing Your Device” on page 17.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings ➔ Security.
2. Tap Screen lock for these settings:
   - None: No pattern, PIN, or password is required.
   - Swipe: Swipe the screen to unlock it.
   - Pattern: A screen unlock pattern is a touch gesture you create and use to unlock your device. Follow the prompts to create or change your screen unlock pattern.
   - PIN: Select a PIN to use for unlocking the screen.
   - Password: Create a password for unlocking the screen.

Note: Additional options are available only if you set Screen lock to display the lock screen (any setting other than Swipe or None).
**Using Swipe**

This feature is the least secure locking method and only requires that a user swipe the screen to unlock the device.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings ➔ Security.
2. Tap Screen lock ➔ Swipe.

**Setting an Unlock Pattern**

Creating a screen unlock pattern increases security on the phone. When you enable the User visible pattern field, you will draw an unlock pattern on the screen whenever you want to unlock the device’s touch screen.

The feature is now paired with a backup PIN code that acts as a backup to the pattern lock. If you forget your pattern, you can regain access to the device by entering a PIN code.

---

**Note:** Make sure the Require Pattern field is activated.

---

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings ➔ Security.
2. Tap Screen lock ➔ Pattern.
3. Review the on-screen animation procedure for drawing a pattern and tap Next when you are ready to draw a pattern.
4. Draw your pattern by touching your first on-screen point. Then, without removing your finger from the screen, drag your finger over adjacent points until the gray trace line overlaps each point and they are highlighted with a green circle.
5. When you have connected at least four dots in a vertical, horizontal or diagonal direction, lift your finger from the screen and tap Continue.
6. Confirm the new pattern by redrawing it and then tapping Confirm. The Unlock pattern is set.
7. Enter the backup PIN code and tap Continue. Reenter the PIN to reconfirm the previous entry and tap OK.
**Changing the Screen Lock Pattern**

This feature allows you to change the previously stored unlock pattern and update it if necessary. This process is similar to changing your password from time to time.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps → Settings → Security.
2. Tap Screen lock.
3. Retrace your current pattern on the screen.
4. Tap Pattern and repeat steps 3 - 7 from the previous section.

**Deleting the Screen Lock Pattern**

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps → Settings → Security.
2. Tap Screen lock.
3. Retrace your current pattern on the screen.
4. Tap None.

---

**PIN Lock and Unlock**

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps → Settings → Security.
2. Tap Screen lock → PIN.
3. Enter a PIN number using the numeric keypad and touch Continue to confirm the password.
4. Confirm the PIN by re-entering it and tap OK to confirm. Your phone now requires you to enter this PIN number in order to unlock the phone.

**Password Lock and Unlock**

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps → Settings → Security.
2. Tap Screen lock → Password.
3. Enter a password using the keypad and tap Continue to confirm the password.
4. Confirm the password by re-entering it and tap OK to confirm.
Make Pattern Visible
When the Make pattern visible option is enabled, the device displays the on-screen lock grid that is used for unlocking.

Note: This option only appears when a screen lock option is active.

Locking Automatically
This option allows you to define the amount of time that must pass before the device can automatically lock on its own.

Note: This option only appears when a screen lock option is active.

Lock Instantly with Power Key
When enabled, the screen is automatically locked after pressing the Power/Lock key.

Note: This option only appears when a screen lock option is active.

Vibrate on Screen Tap
When enabled, you will feel vibration as feedback while drawing the pattern, using a PIN or password lock.

Note: This option only appears when a screen lock option is active.

Owner Information
Use this option to enable or disable whether to show owner information on the lock screen.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings ➔ Security ➔ Owner information.

2. Tap the Show owner info on lock screen checkbox to create a checkmark if you want your owner information displayed.

3. Enter text that you would like displayed on your Lock screen.

4. Tap Back twice to save the new text and return to the previous screen.
**Encryption**

To require a numeric PIN or password to decrypt your tablet each time you power it on:

2. Tap Encrypt device. For more information, read the displayed help screen.

**Tip:** Make sure your battery is charged more than 80 percent. Encryption takes an hour or more.

---

**Setting up SIM Card Lock**

Prevent another user from using your SIM card to make unauthorized calls or from accessing information stored on your SIM card by protecting the information using a PIN code.

2. Tap Set up SIM card lock.
3. Tap Lock SIM card, enter your SIM PIN code, then tap OK.

---

**Password Settings**

When you create a phone password you can also configure the phone to display the password as you type it instead of using an asterisk (*).

2. Tap Make passwords visible to activate this feature. When enabled, a check mark ✅ appears in the check box.

---

**Note:** You must activate Lock SIM card before you can change your SIM PIN code.

---

**To change an existing SIM Card PIN:**

1. Tap Change SIM PIN.
2. Enter the old SIM PIN code and tap OK.
3. Enter the new SIM PIN code and tap OK.
4. Re-type the new SIM PIN code and tap OK.
**Device Administration**

To add or remove device administrators:

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings ➔ Security.
2. Tap Device administrators to begin configuring this setting.
3. Select an administrator device and follow the prompts.

**Unknown Sources**

Before you can download a web application you must enable the Unknown sources feature (enables downloading). Developers can use this option to install non-Play Store applications.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings ➔ Security.
2. Tap Unknown sources to active this feature.
   An informational pop-up displays.
3. Read the message and tap OK to allow installation of non-Google Play applications.
   When enabled, a check mark ✔ appears in the check box.

---

**Warning!** Enabling this option causes your tablet and personal data to be more vulnerable to attack by applications from unknown sources.

**Note:** If you are notified that you can not download a Play Store application because it comes from an “Unknown source”, enabling this option corrects this issue.

---

**Credential Storage**

This option allows certain applications to access secure certificates and other credentials. Certificates and credentials can be installed to the SD card and password protected.

**Trusted Credentials**

If a certificate authority (CA) certificate gets compromised or for some other reason you do not trust it, you can disable or remove it.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings ➔ Security.
2. Tap Trusted credentials to display only trusted CA certificates. A check mark displayed next to the feature indicates secure credentials.
The trusted credentials screen has two tabs:

- **System**: Displays CA certificates that are permanently installed in the ROM of your device.
- **User**: Displays any CA certificates that you installed, for example, in the process of installing a client certificate.

3. Tap a CA certificate to examine its details.
   A scrolling screen displays the details.

4. Scroll to the bottom of the details screen and touch **Disable** to disable a System certificate or **Remove** to remove a User certificate.

   **Caution!** When you disable a system CA certificate, the **Disable** button changes to **Enable**, so you can enable the certificate again, if necessary. When you remove a user-installed CA certificate, it is permanently deleted and must be re-installed, if needed.

5. Tap **OK** to return to the certificate list.
   When enabled, a check mark ✓ appears in the check box.

---

**Install from Device Storage**
Install encrypted certificates from a storage device, such as a PC, with the USB cable.

1. From a Home screen, tap ‏Apps ➔ Settings ➔ Security.
2. Tap **Install from device storage**, then choose a certificate and follow the prompts to install.

**Clear Credentials**
Clear stored credentials.

**Note:** This setting only appears if you have installed encrypted certificates.

1. From a Home screen, tap ‏Apps ➔ Settings ➔ Security.
2. Tap **Clear credentials** to remove all certificates.
Language and Input Settings

This setting allows you to configure the language in which to display the menus. You can also set on-screen keyboard options.

Language Settings

To set the language that the menus display on the device:
1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings ➔ Language and input ➔ Language.
2. Select a language and region from the list.

Select Input Method

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings ➔ Language and input ➔ Default.
2. Select an input method.
   – or –
   Tap Configure input methods to alter/modify the available input methods.

Android Keyboard Settings

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings ➔ Language and input.
2. Tap Android keyboard to automatically use Google voice typing.
3. Tap ⌚ next to Android keyboard.
   • Input languages Select the languages you want available for typing.
   • Auto-capitalization: Check to have the on-screen keyboard automatically capitalize the first letter of the first word after a period, the first word in a text field, and each word in name fields.
   • Vibrate on keypress: Check to vibrate each time you tap a key on the on-screen keyboard.
   • Sound on keypress: Check to play a brief sound each time you tap a key on the on-screen keyboard.
   • Add-on dictionaries: Select to view additionally added dictionaries.
   • Auto-correction: Check to automatically enter a suggested word, highlighted in the strip above the keyboard, when you enter a space or punctuation.
• **Advanced settings**: Choose from these additional setting options such as: Key popup dismiss delay, Suggest Contact names, Bigram suggestions, Enable recorrections, Keypress vibration during settings, and Keypress sound volume settings.

**Configure Google Voice Typing**

1. From a Home screen, tap 📱 Apps ➔ 🌐 Settings ➔ Language and input.
2. Tap Google voice typing to automatically use Google voice typing.
3. Tap ☰ next to Google voice typing.
4. Select a language by tapping Select input languages area.
5. Remove the check mark from the Automatic field. This allows you to select additional languages.
6. Select the desired languages.
7. Activate Block offensive words to block recognition of known offensive words or language. (A green check mark indicates the feature is active).

**Configuring the Samsung keyboard**

1. Tap ☰ next to Samsung keyboard.
2. Set any of the following options:
   - **Input language**: Used to set a default text entry language. Touch this field, scroll through the options, and touch the desired input language. When activated, a check appears in the box.
   - **XT9**: Enable or disable XT9 predictive text. When enabled the system suggests words matching your text entries, and, optionally, completes common words automatically.

When XT9 is enabled, touch the XT9 advanced settings field to set the following options:
   - **Word completion**: Enable or disable automatic word completion for words matching your text entries.
   - **Word completion point**: Choose the number of letters for the system to use to predict words for automatic completion.
   - **Spell correction**: Enable or disable automatic spell checking and correction.
   - **Next word prediction**: When enabled, the system predicts the next word based on common usage patterns.

When enabled, a check mark ✅ appears in the check box.
Auto-substitution: When enabled, the system automatically replaces words you enter with words from the XT9 auto-substitution list.

Regional correction: When enabled, the system automatically changes the spelling of words based on norms for your locale.

Recapture: When enabled, the system re-displays matching words when you make corrections to a word inserted by the system.

XT9 my words: Add words to your XT9 predictive text dictionary.

XT9 auto-substitution: Manage the list of words the system uses for auto-substitution (Auto-substitution setting must be enabled).

• Automatic period: Enable or disable automatic insertion of a “full stop” (period and space to end a sentence) by touching the space bar twice.

• Sound on keypress: Check to play a brief sound each time you touch a key on the on-screen keyboard.

Auto capitalization: Enable or disable auto-capitalization. When enabled, the system automatically capitalizes words in your text based on common usage, such as at the beginning of sentences.

Voice input: Enable or disable the Voice input feature. When enabled, you can choose to enter text by speaking the words, using Google’s networked speech recognition feature.

Handwriting settings: enables the device to recognize on-screen handwriting and convert it to text.

Tutorial: Displays help for using the Samsung keyboard and XT9 predictive text.
Configuring the Swype Keypad

- Tap  next to Swype to display the following options:
  
  Select Input Method
  
  - For more information, refer to “Language and Input Settings” on page 229.

How to Swype

- Displays Swype help information. Tap a topic to view the information.

Personal dictionary

- Add words to or delete words from your personal Swype dictionary. Tap + to add words and − to remove words.

Preferences

- Audio feedback: When enabled, plays sounds as you enter text.
- Vibrate on keypress: When enabled, the device vibrates on text entry.
- Show tips: Turn on helpful tips from Swype.
- Auto-spacing: When enabled, inserts spaces automatically when you pause entering text.

- Auto-capitalization: When enabled, automatically capitalizes the first letter of the first word in a sentence.
- Show complete trace: When enabled, briefly display the Swype trace.
- Word suggestion: When enabled, suggests possible matching words as you enter text.
- Speed vs. accuracy: Send the sensitivity of Swype text recognition.
- Reset Swype’s dictionary: Delete all words you have added to the Swype dictionary.
- Version: View the current Swype software version.

Language Options

- Allows you to select the languages available from the Swype keyboard. To choose the desired language, tap the language key.
Configuring Voice Input Recognition

This feature allows the device to correctly recognize verbal input.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings ➔ Language and input ➔ Voice search.
2. Configure the available options to alter the settings associated with this feature:
   - **Language**: selects an input language and associated dialect recognition (if available).
   - **SafeSearch**: sets the explicit image filter settings. These settings apply to only Google voice search results. Choose from: Off, Moderate, or Strict.
   - **Block offensive words**: allows you to block recognition of known offensive words or language. (A green check mark indicates the feature is active).

Configuring Text-to-speech

This feature allows the device to provide a verbal readout of on-screen data such as messages and incoming caller information. This action is called TTS (Text To Speech).

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings ➔ Language and input ➔ Text-to-speech output.
2. Select a current Preferred TTS engine from the list of available options. The default is Google Text-to-speech.
3. Tap 📇 next to the preferred TTS engine and configure.
4. Configure the General options to alter the settings associated with this feature:
   - **Speech rate**: adjusts the rate at which on-screen text is spoken by the device. Choose from: Very slow, Slow, Normal, Fast, and Very fast.
   - **Listen to an example**: plays a short example of what the text-to-speech feature sounds like on your device when activated.
• **Driving mode**: incoming calls and new notifications are automatically ready out loud.
  — Once active, tap the Driving mode field to reveal the associated settings.

• **Driving mode settings**: allows you to select which applications can use TTS while the Driving Mode is enabled. Choose from: New emails, Schedule, or Unlock screen.

**Configuring the Mouse-TrackPad**

This feature allows you to configure the pointer speed for the mouse/trackpad.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings ➔ Language and input.
2. Tap Pointer speed then drag the slide to the right to go faster or to the left to go slower.
3. Tap OK to save your setting.

**Back up and Reset**

Location settings, backup configurations, or reset the phone to erase all personal data.

- From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings ➔ Backup and reset.

**Device Backup and Restore**

The device can be configured to back up your current settings, application data and settings.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings ➔ Backup and reset.
2. Tap Back up my data to create a backup of your current phone settings and applications.
3. Tap Backup account to assign the account being backed up.
4. Tap Automatic restore to assist in the re-installation of a previously installed application (including preferences and data).
5. Tap Factory data reset to reset your device and sound settings to the factory default settings.
**Prior to doing a Factory Reset**

Before initiating a factory reset, it is recommended that you backup your personal data prior to use.

**Factory Data Reset**

From this menu you can reset your device and sound settings to the factory default settings.

Use Factory data reset to return your device to its factory defaults. This setting erases all data from the device, including Google or other email account settings, system and application data and settings, and downloaded applications, as well as your music, photos, videos, and other files. If you reset the tablet in this way, the next time you turn on your tablet you are prompted to reenter the same kind of information as when you first started Android.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** → **Settings** → **Backup and reset** → **Factory data reset**.
2. Tap **Reset device**.
3. If necessary, enter your password and tap **Delete all**.

The device resets to the factory default settings automatically and when finished displays the Home screen.

**Dock**

This menu allows you to assign external speakers when the device is docked.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps** → **Settings** → **Dock**.
2. Tap **Dock sound**.

The tablet will not play sounds when inserting and removing the device from the dock when enabled.

When enabled, a check mark ✅ appears in the check box.
**Date and Time**

By default, your device receives date and time information from the wireless network. When you are outside network coverage, you may want to set date and time information manually using the Date & time settings.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings ➔ Date and time.
2. Tap Automatic date and time to allow the network set the date and time.

**Important!** Deactivate Automatic date and time to manually set the rest of the options.

3. Tap Automatic time zone to allow the network set the time zone information automatically. Configure the following settings:
   - **Set date:** Enter the current date (only available when the Automatic setting is disabled).
   - **Set time:** Enter the current time (only available when the Automatic setting is disabled).
   - **Select time zone:** Choose your local time zone (only available when the Automatic setting is disabled).

**Use 24-hour format** Set the format for time displays.

**Select date format** Set the format for date displays.

**Accessibility**

Accessibility services are special features to make using the device easier for those with certain physical disabilities. Use the Accessibility settings to activate these services.

**Note:** You can download accessibility applications from Google Play and manage their use here.

**Services**

Enable or disable accessibility services.

**Note:** You must activate Accessibility before enabling services.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings ➔ Accessibility.
2. Tap TalkBack to activate TalkBack.

**Note:** TalkBack, when installed and enabled, speaks feedback to help blind and low-vision users.

3. Tap the OFF / ON icon to turn TalkBack on.
4. Tap **Settings** to configure TalkBack.

---

**Important!** TalkBack can collect all of the text you enter, except passwords, including personal data and credit card numbers. It may also log your user interface interactions with the device.

---

**System**

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps ➔ Settings ➔ Accessibility**.

2. Configure the following settings:
   - **Font size**: Set a font size. Options are: Tiny, Small, Normal, Large, and Huge.
   - **Auto-rotate screen**: Automatically rotates the screen from landscape to portrait orientation and vice versa.
   - **Speak passwords**: Speaks passwords to enter them.
   - **Tap and hold delay**: Tap a delay time. Options are: Short, Medium, and Long.
   - **Install Web scripts**: Tap Allow to allow applications to install scripts from Google that make their Web content more accessible.

---

**Motion**

It is possible to control certain aspects of your tablet by simply tilting it. You can tilt your tablet to reduce or enlarge the screen. You can move an icon from one Home page to another by panning your device to the left or right while holding the icon.

1. From a Home screen, tap **Apps ➔ Settings ➔ Motion**.

2. Tap **Motion activation** to make the following options available. Tap the **OFF / ON** icon to activate each option.
   - Tap **Tilt to zoom** or **Pan to edit**.
Developer Options

Set options for application development.

**USB Debugging**

When enabled, allows debugging when the device is attached to a PC by a USB cable.

**Note:** This setting is used for development purposes.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings ➔ Developer options.
2. Tap USB debugging to enable or disable the setting. When enabled, a check mark ✓ appears in the check box.

**Development Device ID**

The identification number for your tablet when using it as a development tool displays in this field.

Allowing Mock Locations

This setting is used by developers when developing location-based applications. If you are a developer who is testing a GPS applications using this device, you can tell the device that the phone is at different GPS locations. In other words, the phone is allowed to “mock” the coordinates.

**Note:** This setting is used for development purposes.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings ➔ Developer options.
2. Tap Allow mock locations to enable or disable the setting. When enabled, a check mark ✓ appears in the check box.
Desktop Backup Password

Protect the desktop with a backup password ID.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps → Settings → Developer options.
2. Tap Desktop backup password.
3. In the Settings screen, enter the current full backup password, the new password for full backups, then enter the new password again.
4. Tap Set backup password to save the password change.

User Interface Options

Configure the user interface by setting the behavior for the way the screen behaves when using applications or displaying data.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps → Settings → Developer options.
2. Tap the check box next to each option to enable:
   - Strict mode: Makes the screen flash when applications perform long operations on the main thread.
   - Show pointer location: Highlights the data that was touched on the screen.
   - Show touches: Displays touch interactions on the screen.
   - Show screen updates: Areas of the screen flash when they update.
   - Show CPU usage: Screen highlights the current CPU usage.
   - Force GPU rendering: Uses a 2D acceleration in applications.
   - Window animation scale: Configure the scale for animation (ranges from off to 10x).
   - Transition animation scale: Configure the scale for transitioning when using animation (ranges from off to 10x).

Application Options

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps → Settings → Developer options.
2. Tap Do not keep activities to destroy every activity as soon as the application is closed.
3. Tap Limit background processes to set the number of processes that can run in the background. Options are: Standard limit, No background processes, and 1 to 4 processes at most.
4. Tap Show all ANRs to display a prompt when applications running in the background are not responding.
About Device

View information about your device, including status, legal information, hardware and software versions, and battery use.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings ➔ About device.

2. Tap items to view details:
   - **Software update**: Connect to the network and download new software. For more information, refer to “Software Update” on page 241.
   - **Status**: displays the battery status, the level of the battery (percentage), the network connection, signal strength, mobile network type, service state, roaming status, mobile network state, MDN, IMEI number, IMEI SV, IP address, Wi-Fi MAC address, Bluetooth address, Serial number, and Up time.
   - **Legal information**: Display Open source licenses, Google legal, and License settings information.

Tip: To find your device’s DivX® registration code and information about registering your device to play DivX protected video, touch License settings ➔ DivX® VOD.

- **Model number**: displays the device’s model number.
- **Android version**: displays the firmware version loaded on this device.
- **Baseband version**: displays the baseband version loaded on this device.
- **Kernel version**: displays the kernel version loaded on this device.
- **Build number**: displays the software, build number.
Software Update

The Software Update feature enables you to use your device to connect to the network and download any new software directly to your device. The device automatically updates with the latest available software.

**Note:** Before you can check for system updates, you must set up a Gmail account. For more information, refer to “Setting Up Your Gmail Account” on page 78.

Software Update Options

Once you have set up your Gmail account, you can check for a software update.

**Note:** The software update notification appears as at the bottom-right of the screen.

1. From a Home screen, tap Apps ➔ Settings ➔ About device ➔ Software update.
2. Read the Software update information screen.
3. Select an available option:

**Note:** You configure the device’s software update parameters.

- **OK:** Tap this option to connect to the remote server, detect if there is an available update, the begin the download over your existing data connection.
  — Software updates can include bug fixes, enhancements to services, to the device or currently installed software.
- **Wi-Fi settings:** Enable this option to only download available updates via an active Wi-Fi connection. If disabled, the device will begin available downloads via its’ T-Mobile connection.
- **Cancel:** Tap this option to cancel the operation.
Section 11: Health and Safety Information

This section outlines the safety precautions associated with using your Galaxy Tab. The terms “GALAXY” or “mobile device” are used in this section to refer to your Galaxy Tab. Read this information before using your mobile device.

Exposure to Radio Frequency (RF) Signals

Although GALAXY is not a cell phone, it can operate on the same network as cell phones and can use the same Radio Frequency (RF) signals to communicate with the network as a cell phone. Therefore, although the following information refers specifically to RF exposure from wireless phones, it may apply similarly to GALAXY when it is being used on a cell phone network.

The U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) has published information for consumers relating to Radio Frequency (RF) exposure from wireless phones. The FDA publication includes the following information:

**Do cell phones pose a health hazard?**

Many people are concerned that cell phone radiation will cause cancer or other serious health hazards. The weight of scientific evidence has not linked cell phones with any health problems.

Cell phones emit low levels of Radio Frequency (RF) energy. Over the past 15 years, scientists have conducted hundreds of studies looking at the biological effects of the radio frequency energy emitted by cell phones. While some researchers have reported biological changes associated with RF energy, these studies have failed to be replicated. The majority of studies published have failed to show an association between exposure to radio frequency from a cell phone and health problems.

The low levels of RF cell phones emit while in use are in the microwave frequency range. They also emit RF at substantially reduced time intervals when in the stand-by mode. Whereas high levels of RF can produce health effects (by heating tissue), exposure to low level RF that does not produce heating effects causes no known adverse health effects.
The biological effects of radio frequency energy should not be confused with the effects from other types of electromagnetic energy.

Very high levels of electromagnetic energy, such as is found in X-rays and gamma rays, can ionize biological tissues. Ionization is a process where electrons are stripped away from their normal locations in atoms and molecules. It can permanently damage biological tissues including DNA, the genetic material.

The energy levels associated with radio frequency energy, including both radio waves and microwaves, are not great enough to cause ionization of atoms and molecules. Therefore, RF energy is a type of non-ionizing radiation. Other types of non-ionizing radiation include visible light, infrared radiation (heat), and other forms of electromagnetic radiation with relatively low frequencies.

While RF energy does not ionize particles, large amounts can increase body temperatures and cause tissue damage. Two areas of the body, the eyes and the testes, are particularly vulnerable to RF heating because there is relatively little blood flow in them to carry away excess heat.

**Research Results to Date: Is there a connection between RF and certain health problems?**

The results of most studies conducted to date say no. In addition, attempts to replicate and confirm the few studies that have shown a connection have failed.

The scientific community at large therefore believes that the weight of scientific evidence does not show an association between exposure to Radio Frequency (RF) from cell phones and adverse health outcomes. Still the scientific community has supported additional research to address gaps in knowledge. Some of these studies are described below.

**Interphone Study**

Interphone is a large international study designed to determine whether cell phones increase the risk of head and neck cancer. A report published in the International Journal of Epidemiology (June, 2010) compared cell phone usage for more than 5,000 people with brain tumors (glioma and meningioma) and a similar number of healthy controls. Results of this study did NOT show that cell phones caused brain cancer. In this study, most people had no increased risk of brain cancer from using cell phones. For people with the heaviest use of cell phones (an average of more than ½ hour per day, every day, for over 10 years) the study suggested a
slight increase in brain cancer. However, the authors determined that biases and errors prevented any conclusions being drawn from this data. Additional information about Interphone can be found at http://www.iarc.fr/en/media-centre/pr/2010/pdfs/pr200_E.pdf.

Interphone is the largest cell phone study to date, but it did not answer all questions about cell phone safety. Additional research is being conducted around the world, and the FDA continues to monitor developments in this field.

**International Cohort Study on Mobile Phone Users (COSMOS)**

The COSMOS study aims to conduct long-term health monitoring of a large group of people to determine if there are any health issues linked to long-term exposure to radio frequency energy from cell phone use. The COSMOS study will follow approximately 300,000 adult cell phone users in Europe for 20 to 30 years. Additional information about the COSMOS study can be found at http://www.ukcosmos.org/index.html.

---

**Risk of Brain Cancer from Exposure to Radio Frequency Fields in Childhood and Adolescence (MOBI-KIDS)**

MOBI-KIDS is an international study investigating the relationship between exposure to radio frequency energy from communication technologies including cell phones and brain cancer in young people. This is an international multi-center study involving 14 European and non-European countries. Additional information about MOBI-KIDS can be found at http://www.creal.cat/programes-recerca/en_projectes-creal/view.php?ID=39.

**Surveillance, Epidemiology, and End Results (SEER) Program of the National Cancer Institute**

The National Cancer Institute (NCI) actively follows cancer statistics in the United States to detect any change in rates of new cases for brain cancer. If cell phones play a role in risk for brain cancer, rates should go up, because heavy cell phone use has been common for quite some time in the U.S. Between 1987 and 2005, the overall age-adjusted incidence of brain cancer did not increase. Additional information about SEER can be found at http://seer.cancer.gov/.
Cell Phone Industry Actions

Although the existing scientific data do not justify FDA regulatory actions, the FDA has urged the cell phone industry to take a number of steps, including the following:

- Support-needed research on possible biological effects of RF for the type of signal emitted by cell phones;
- Design cell phones in a way that minimizes any RF exposure to the user; and
- Cooperate in providing users of cell phones with the current information on cell phone use and human health concerns.

The FDA also is working with voluntary standard-setting bodies such as the Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE), the International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP), and others to assure that safety standards continue to adequately protect the public.

Reducing Exposure: Hands-Free Kits and Other Accessories

Steps to Reduce Exposure to Radio Frequency Energy

If there is a risk from being exposed to radio frequency energy (RF) from cell phones - and at this point we do not know that there is - it is probably very small. But, if you are concerned about avoiding even potential risks, you can take a few simple steps to minimize your RF exposure.

- Reduce the amount of time spent using your cell phone;
- Use speaker mode or a headset to place more distance between your head and the cell phone.

Hands-Free Kits

Hands-free kits may include audio or Bluetooth® headsets and various types of body-worn accessories such as belt-clips and holsters. Combinations of these can be used to reduce RF energy absorption from cell phones.

Headsets can substantially reduce exposure because the phone is held away from the head in the user's hand or in approved body-worn accessories. Cell phones marketed in the U.S. are required to meet RF exposure compliance requirements when used against the head and against the body.
Because there are no known risks from exposure to RF emissions from cell phones, there is no reason to believe that hands-free kits reduce risks. Hands-free kits can be used for convenience and comfort. They are also required by law in many states if you want to use your phone while driving.

**Cell Phone Accessories that Claim to Shield the Head from RF Radiation**

Because there are no known risks from exposure to RF emissions from cell phones, there is no reason to believe that accessories which claim to shield the head from those emissions reduce risks. Some products that claim to shield the user from RF absorption use special phone cases, while others involve nothing more than a metallic accessory attached to the phone. Studies have shown that these products generally do not work as advertised. Unlike “hands-free” kits, these so-called “shields” may interfere with proper operation of the phone. The phone may be forced to boost its power to compensate, leading to an increase in RF absorption.

**Children and Cell Phones**

The scientific evidence does not show a danger to any users of cell phones from RF exposure, including children and teenagers. The steps adults can take to reduce RF exposure apply to children and teenagers as well.

- Reduce the amount of time spent on the cell phone;
- Use speaker mode or a headset to place more distance between the head and the cell phone.

Some groups sponsored by other national governments have advised that children be discouraged from using cell phones at all. For example, The Stewart Report from the United Kingdom made such a recommendation in December 2000. In this report, a group of independent experts noted that no evidence exists that using a cell phone causes brain tumors or other ill effects. Their recommendation to limit cell phone use by children was strictly precautionary; it was not based on scientific evidence that any health hazard exists.

Additional information on the safety of RF exposures from various sources can be obtained from the following organizations (updated 10/1/2010):
- FCC RF Safety Program:
Specific Absorption Rate (SAR) Certification Information

Your wireless mobile device is a radio transmitter and receiver. It is designed and manufactured not to exceed the exposure limits for Radio Frequency (RF) energy set by the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) of the U.S. Government.

These FCC RF exposure limits are derived from the recommendations of two expert organizations: the National Council on Radiation Protection and Measurement (NCRP) and the Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers (IEEE). In both cases, the recommendations were developed by scientific and engineering experts drawn from industry, government, and academia after extensive reviews of the scientific literature related to the biological effects of RF energy.

The RF exposure limit set by the FCC for wireless mobile devices employs a unit of measurement known as the Specific Absorption Rate (SAR). The SAR is a measure of the rate of absorption of RF energy by the human body expressed in units of watts per kilogram (W/kg). The FCC requires wireless devices to comply with a safety limit of 1.6 watts per kilogram (1.6 W/kg).
The FCC SAR limit incorporates a substantial margin of safety to give additional protection to the public and to account for any variations in measurements.

SAR tests are conducted using standard operating positions accepted by the FCC with the mobile device transmitting at its highest certified power level in all tested frequency bands. Although the SAR is determined at the highest certified power level, the actual SAR level of the mobile device while operating can be well below the maximum reported value. This is because the mobile device is designed to operate at multiple power levels so as to use only the power required to reach the network. In general, the closer you are to a wireless base station antenna, the lower the power output of the mobile device.

Before a new model mobile device is available for sale to the public, it must be tested and certified to the FCC that it does not exceed the SAR limit established by the FCC. Tests for each model mobile device are performed in positions and locations (e.g. near the body) as required by the FCC. For typical operations, this mobile device has been tested and meets FCC SAR guidelines.

Use of other accessories may not ensure compliance with FCC RF exposure guidelines. The FCC has granted an Equipment Authorization for this mobile device with all reported SAR levels evaluated as in compliance with the FCC RF exposure guidelines. The maximum SAR values for this model device as reported to the FCC are:

**Cellular/PCS WCDMA/GSM/EDGE and AWS WCDMA**
- Body: 1.18 W/Kg.
- Simultaneous Transmission: 1.58 W/kg.

**WLAN**
- Body: 1.12 W/Kg.
- Simultaneous Transmission: 1.58 W/kg.

SAR information on this and other model mobile devices can be accessed online on the FCC’s website through [http://transition.fcc.gov/oet/rfsafety/sar.html](http://transition.fcc.gov/oet/rfsafety/sar.html). To find information that pertains to a particular model mobile device, this site uses the mobile device FCC ID number, which is usually printed somewhere on the case of the mobile device.

Once you have the FCC ID number for a particular mobile device, follow the instructions on the website and it should provide values for typical or maximum SAR for a particular mobile device. Additional SAR information can also be

FCC Part 15 Information to User

Pursuant to part 15.21 of the FCC Rules, you are cautioned that changes or modifications not expressly approved by Samsung could void your authority to operate the device. This device complies with part 15 of the FCC Rules. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

Note: This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class B digital device, pursuant to part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference in a residential installation. This equipment generates, uses and can radiate radio frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. However, there is no guarantee that interference will not occur in a particular installation. If this equipment does cause harmful interference to radio or television reception, which can be determined by turning the equipment off and on, the user is encouraged to try to correct the interference by one or more of the following measures:

- Reorient or relocate the receiving antenna.
- Increase the separation between the equipment and receiver.
- Connect the equipment into an outlet on a circuit different from that to which the receiver is connected.
- Consult the dealer or an experienced radio/TV technician for help.

Smart Practices While Driving

On the Road - Off the Tablet

The primary responsibility of every driver is the safe operation of his or her vehicle.

Responsible drivers understand that no secondary task should be performed while driving whether it be eating, drinking, talking to passengers, or using a mobile device - unless the driver has assessed the driving conditions and is confident that the secondary task will not interfere with their primary responsibility. Do not engage in any activity while driving a moving vehicle which may cause you to take your eyes off the road or become so absorbed in the activity that your ability to concentrate on the act of driving becomes
impaired. Samsung is committed to promoting responsible
driving and giving drivers the tools they need to understand
and address distractions.

Check the laws and regulations on the use of mobile devices
and their accessories in the areas where you drive. Always
obey them. The use of these devices may be prohibited or
restricted in certain areas. For example, only hands-free use
may be permitted in certain areas.

Before using your device to chat with friends, consider your
circumstances. Let the chat wait when driving conditions
require. Remember, driving comes first, nothing else!

If you consider a chat necessary and appropriate, follow
these tips:

• Use a hands-free device;
• Secure your mobile device within easy reach;
• Chat when you are not moving;
• Plan chats when your car will be stationary;
• Do not engage in stressful or emotional conversations;
• Let the person with whom you are speaking know that you are
driving and will suspend the chat if necessary;
• Do not take notes or look up information while driving;

Notice regarding legal restrictions on mounting this device in
an automobile:

Laws in some states may prohibit mounting this device on or
near the windshield of an automobile. In other states, the law
may permit mounting this device only in specific locations in
the automobile. Be sure to consult the state and local laws or
ordinances where you drive before mounting this device in
an automobile. Failure to comply with these restrictions could
result in fines, penalties, or other damages.

Never mount this device in a manner that will obstruct the
driver’s clear view of the street and traffic.

Never use wireless data services such as Web browsing or
e-mail while operating a vehicle.

Never watch videos, such as a movie or clip, or play video
games while operating a vehicle.

For more information, go to http://www.ctia.org.

Battery Use and Safety

The battery in GALAXY is not intended to be replaced by the
consumer. If you believe the battery is damaged or needs to
be replaced, take the GALAXY to a service center for
inspection and replacement.
• Do not let the GALAXY or battery come in contact with liquids. Liquids can get into the GALAXY’s circuits, leading to corrosion. Even when the GALAXY appears to be dry and appears to operate normally, the circuitry could slowly corrode and pose a safety hazard. If the GALAXY and/or battery get wet, have them checked by your service provider or contact Samsung, even if they appear to be working properly.

• Do not place your battery in or near a heat source. Excessive heating can damage the GALAXY or the battery and could cause the GALAXY or the battery to explode. Do not dry a wet or damp battery with an appliance or heat source such as a microwave oven, hair dryer, iron, or radiator. Avoid leaving your GALAXY in your car in high temperatures.

• Do not dispose of the GALAXY or the battery in a fire. The GALAXY or the battery may explode when overheated.

• Avoid dropping the GALAXY. Dropping the GALAXY, especially on a hard surface, can potentially cause damage to the GALAXY. If you suspect damage to the GALAXY or battery, take it to a service center for inspection.

• Never use any charger or battery that is damaged in any way.

**Important!** Use only Samsung-approved batteries, and recharge your battery only with Samsung-approved chargers which are specifically designed for your GALAXY.

**WARNING!** Use of a non-Samsung-approved battery or charger may present a risk of fire, explosion, leakage, or other hazard. Samsung’s warranty does not cover damage to the GALAXY caused by non-Samsung-approved batteries and/or chargers.

• Do not use incompatible batteries and chargers. Some websites and second-hand dealers not associated with reputable manufacturers and carriers, might be selling incompatible or even counterfeit batteries and chargers. Consumers should purchase manufacturer or carrier-recommended products and accessories. If unsure about whether a replacement battery or charger is compatible, contact the manufacturer of the battery or charger.

• Misuse or use of incompatible batteries and charging devices could result in damage to the equipment and a possible risk of fire, explosion, or leakage, leading to serious injuries, damages to your phone, or other serious hazard.
Samsung Mobile Products and Recycling

Samsung cares for the environment and encourages its customers to recycle Samsung mobile devices and genuine Samsung accessories.

Proper disposal of your mobile device and its battery is not only important for safety, it benefits the environment. Batteries must be recycled or disposed of properly.

For more information about recycling your GALAXY, go to: http://mobile.samsungusa.com/recycling/index.jsp or call 1-800-822-8837 for more information.

To find the nearest recycling location, go to: www.samsung.com/recyclingdirect or call 1-877-278-0799.

Warning! Never dispose of batteries in a fire because they may explode.

UL Certified Travel Charger

The Travel Charger for this mobile device has met applicable UL safety requirements. Please adhere to the following safety instructions per UL guidelines:

Failure to follow the instructions outlined may lead to serious personal injury and possible property damage.

Important Safety Instructions - Save These Instructions.

Danger - To reduce the risk of fire or electric shock, carefully follow these instructions.

For connection to a supply not in North America, use an attachment plug adaptor of the proper configuration for the power outlet.

This power unit is intended to be correctly oriented in a vertical or horizontal or floor mount position.

Display / Touch-Screen

Please note the following information when using your mobile device:

Warning Regarding Display
The display on your mobile device is made of glass or acrylic and could break if your mobile device is dropped or if it receives significant impact. Do not use if screen is broken or cracked as this could cause injury to you.

**WARRANTY DISCLAIMER: PROPER USE OF A TOUCH-SCREEN MOBILE DEVICE**

If your mobile device has a touch-screen display, please note that a touch-screen responds best to a light touch from the pad of your finger or a non-metallic stylus. Using excessive force or a metallic object when pressing on the touch-screen may damage the tempered glass surface and void the warranty. For more information, please refer to the “Standard Limited Warranty”.

**GPS**

GALAXY can use a Global Positioning System (GPS) signal for location-based applications. A GPS uses satellites controlled by the U.S. Government that are subject to changes implemented in accordance with the Department of Defense policy and the 2008 Federal Radio navigation Plan (FRP). Changes may affect the performance of location-based technology on your mobile device.

**Your Location**

Location-based information includes information that can be used to determine the approximate location of a mobile device. Mobile devices which are connected to a wireless network transmit location-based information. Additionally, if you use applications that require location-based information (e.g. driving directions), such applications transmit location-based information. The location-based information may be shared with third-parties, including your wireless service provider, applications providers, Samsung, and other third-parties providing services.

**Navigation**

Maps, directions, and other navigation-data, including data relating to your current location, may contain inaccurate or incomplete data, and circumstances can and do change over time. In some areas, complete information may not be available. **Therefore, you should always visually confirm that the navigational instructions are consistent with what you see**
before following them. All users should pay attention to road conditions, closures, traffic, and all other factors that may impact safe driving or walking. Always obey posted road signs.

Emergency Communication

GALAXY should not be relied upon for essential communications (medical emergencies, calls to 911, or communications to emergency services). GALAXY is not designed or intended to be used for such communications. Voice Over Internet Protocol (VOIP) services which may be used on GALAXY to make phone calls do not support 911 calls and are only intended for talking with friends.

Care and Maintenance

Your mobile device is a product of superior design and craftsmanship and should be treated with care. The suggestions below will help you fulfill any warranty obligations and allow you to enjoy this product for many years:

Keep your Samsung Mobile Device away from:

- Liquids of any kind
  
  Keep the mobile device dry. Precipitation, humidity, and liquids contain minerals that will corrode electronic circuits.

If the mobile device does get wet, do not accelerate drying with the use of an oven, microwave, or dryer, because this may damage the mobile device and could cause a fire or explosion. Do not use the mobile device with a wet hand. Doing so may cause an electric shock to you or damage to the mobile device.

- Extreme heat or cold
  
  Avoid temperatures below 0°C / 32°F or above 45°C / 113°F.

- Microwaves
  
  Do not try to dry your mobile device in a microwave oven. Doing so may cause a fire or explosion.

- Dust and Dirt
  
  Do not expose your mobile device to dust, dirt, or sand.

- Cleaning solutions
  
  Do not use harsh chemicals, cleaning solvents, or strong detergents to clean the mobile device. Wipe it with a soft cloth slightly dampened in a mild soap-and-water solution.

- Shock or vibration
  
  Do not drop, knock, or shake the mobile device. Rough handling can break internal circuit boards.
Paint

Do not paint the mobile device. Paint can clog the device’s moving parts or ventilation openings and prevent proper operation.

**Responsible Listening**

**Caution! Avoid potential hearing loss.**

Damage to hearing occurs when a person is exposed to loud sounds over time. The risk of hearing loss increases as sound is played louder and for longer durations. Prolonged exposure to loud sounds (including music) is the most common cause of preventable hearing loss. Some scientific research suggests that using portable audio devices, such as portable music players and cell phones, at high volume settings for long durations may lead to permanent noise-induced hearing loss. This includes the use of headphones (including headsets, earbuds, and Bluetooth® or other wireless devices).

Exposure to very loud sound has also been associated in some studies with tinnitus (a ringing in the ear), hypersensitivity to sound, and distorted hearing. Individual susceptibility to noise-induced hearing loss and potential hearing problem varies. Additionally, the amount of sound produced by a portable audio device varies depending on the nature of the sound, the device settings, and the headphones that are used. As a result, there is no single volume setting that is appropriate for everyone or for every combination of sound, settings, and equipment.

You should follow some common sense recommendations when using any portable audio device:

- Always turn the volume down before plugging the earphones into an audio source.
- Set the volume in a quiet environment and select the lowest volume at which you can hear adequately.
- Be aware that you can adapt to higher volume settings over time, not realizing that the higher volume may be harmful to your hearing.
- When using headphones, turn the volume down if you cannot hear the people speaking near you or if the person sitting next to you can hear what you are listening to.
• Do not turn the volume up to block out noisy surroundings. If you choose to listen to your portable device in a noisy environment, use noise-cancelling headphones to block out background environmental noise. By blocking background environment noise, noise cancelling headphones should allow you to hear the music at lower volumes than when using earbuds.

• Limit the amount of time you listen. As the volume increases, less time is required before you hearing could be affected.

• Avoid using headphones after exposure to extremely loud noises, such as rock concerts, that might cause temporary hearing loss. Temporary hearing loss might cause unsafe volumes to sound normal.

• Do not listen at any volume that causes you discomfort. If you experience ringing in your ears, hear muffled speech, or experience any temporary hearing difficulty after listening to your portable audio device, discontinue use and consult your doctor.

You can obtain additional information on this subject from the following sources:

American Academy of Audiology
11730 Plaza American Drive, Suite 300
Reston, VA 20190
Voice: (800) 222-2336
Email: info@audiology.org
Internet: http://www.audiology.org/Pages/default.aspx

National Institute on Deafness and Other Communication Disorders
National Institutes of Health
31 Center Drive, MSC 2320
Bethesda, MD 20892-2320
Email: nidcdinfo@nih.gov
Internet: http://www.nidcd.nih.gov/
Operating Environment

Remember to follow any special regulations in force in any area, and always switch your mobile device off whenever it is forbidden to use it, or when it may cause interference or danger. When connecting the mobile device or any accessory to another device, read its user’s guide for detailed safety instructions. Do not connect incompatible products.

Using Your Mobile Device Near Other Electronic Devices

Most modern electronic equipment is shielded from Radio Frequency (RF) signals. However, certain electronic equipment may not be shielded against the RF signals from your wireless mobile device. Consult the manufacturer to discuss alternatives.

Implantable Medical Devices

A minimum separation of six (6) inches should be maintained between a handheld wireless mobile device and an implantable medical device, such as a pacemaker or implantable cardioverter defibrillator, to avoid potential interference with the device.

Persons who have such devices:

- Should ALWAYS keep the mobile device more than six (6) inches from their implantable medical device when the mobile device is turned ON;
- Should not carry the mobile device in a breast pocket;
- Should use the ear opposite the implantable medical device to minimize the potential for interference;
- Should turn the mobile device OFF immediately if there is any reason to suspect that interference is taking place;
• Should read and follow the directions from the manufacturer of your implantable medical device. If you have any questions about using your wireless mobile device with an implantable medical device, consult your health care provider.

For more information see: http://www.fcc.gov/oet/rfsafety/rf-faqs.html#.

Other Medical Devices
If you use any other personal medical devices, consult the manufacturer of your device to determine if it is adequately shielded from external RF energy. Your physician may be able to assist you in obtaining this information. Switch your mobile device off in health care facilities when any regulations posted in these areas instruct you to do so. Hospitals or health care facilities may be using equipment that could be sensitive to external RF energy.

Vehicles
RF signals may affect improperly installed or inadequately shielded electronic systems in motor vehicles. Check with the manufacturer or its representative regarding your vehicle before using your mobile device in a motor vehicle. You should also consult the manufacturer of any equipment that has been added to your vehicle.

Posted Facilities
Switch your mobile device off in any facility where posted notices require you to do so.

Potentially Explosive Environments
Switch your mobile device off when in any area with a potentially explosive atmosphere and obey all signs and instructions. Sparks in such areas could cause an explosion or fire resulting in bodily injury or even death. Users are advised to switch the mobile device off while at a refueling point (service station).

Users are reminded of the need to observe restrictions on the use of radio equipment in fuel depots (fuel storage and distribution areas), chemical plants, or where blasting operations are in progress. Areas with a potentially explosive atmosphere are often, but not always, clearly marked. They include below deck on boats, chemical transfer or storage facilities, vehicles using liquefied petroleum gas (such as propane or butane), areas where the air contains chemicals or particles, such as grain, dust, or metal powders, and any other area where you would normally be advised to turn off your vehicle engine.
When your Device is Wet
Do not turn on your device if it is wet. If your device is already on, turn it off and remove the battery immediately (if the device will not turn off or you cannot remove the battery, leave it as-is). Then, dry the device with a towel and take it to a service center.

Restricting Children's Access to Your Mobile Device
Your mobile device is not a toy. Do not allow children to play with it because they could hurt themselves and others, damage the mobile device, or use services that increase your mobile device bill.
Keep the mobile device and all its parts and accessories out of the reach of small children.

FCC Notice and Cautions

FCC Notice
The mobile device may cause TV or radio interference if used in close proximity to receiving equipment. The FCC can require you to stop using the mobile device if such interference cannot be eliminated. Vehicles using liquefied petroleum gas (such as propane or butane) must comply with the National Fire Protection Standard (NFPA-58). For a copy of this standard, contact the National Fire Protection Association.

Cautions
Any changes or modifications to your mobile device not expressly approved in this document could void your warranty for this equipment and void your authority to operate this equipment. Only use approved batteries, antennas, and chargers.
The use of any unauthorized accessories may be dangerous and void the mobile device warranty if said accessories cause damage or a defect to the mobile device. Although your mobile device is quite sturdy, it is a complex piece of equipment and can be broken. Avoid dropping, hitting, bending, or sitting on it.

Other Important Safety Information
• Only qualified personnel should service the mobile device. Faulty service may be dangerous and may invalidate any warranty applicable to the device.
• Ensure that any mobile devices or related equipment used in your vehicle are securely mounted.
• Check regularly that all wireless mobile device equipment in your vehicle is mounted and operating properly.

• When using a headset in dry environments, static electricity can build up in the headset and cause a small quick static electrical shock. To minimize the risk of electrostatic discharge from the headset avoid using the headset in extremely dry environments or touch a grounded unpainted metal object to discharge static electricity before inserting the headset.

• Do not store or carry flammable liquids, gases, or explosive materials in the same compartment as the mobile device, its parts, or accessories.

• For vehicles equipped with an air bag, remember that an air bag inflates with great force. Do not place objects, including installed or portable wireless equipment near or in the area over the air bag or in the air bag deployment area. If wireless equipment is improperly installed and the air bag inflates, serious injury could result.

• Switch your mobile device off before boarding an aircraft. The use of wireless mobile devices in aircraft is illegal and may be dangerous to the aircraft’s operation. Check with appropriate authorities before using any function of a mobile device while on an aircraft.

• Failure to observe these instructions may lead to the suspension or denial of network services to the offender, or legal action, or both.

• While using your device, leave some lights on in the room and do not hold the screen too close to your eyes.

• Seizures or blackouts can occur when you are exposed to flashing lights while watching videos or playing games for extended periods. If you feel any discomfort, stop using the device immediately.

• Reduce risk of repetitive motion injuries. When you repetitively perform actions, such as pressing keys, drawing characters on a touch screen with your fingers, or playing games, you may experience occasional discomfort in your hands, neck, shoulders, or other parts of your body. When using your device for extended periods, hold the device with a relaxed grip, press the keys lightly, and take frequent breaks. If you continue to have discomfort during or after such use, stop use and see a physician.

• If your device has a camera flash or light, do not use the flash or light close to the eyes of people or pets. [122011]
Section 12: Warranty Information

Standard Limited Warranty

What is covered and for how long?
SAMSUNG TELECOMMUNICATIONS AMERICA, LLC (“SAMSUNG”) warrants that SAMSUNG’s devices and accessories (“Products”) are free from defects in material and workmanship under normal use and service for the period commencing upon the date of purchase by the first consumer purchaser and continuing for the following specified period of time after that date:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Product</th>
<th>Warranty Period</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tablet</td>
<td>1 Year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Batteries (Including Internal Batteries)</td>
<td>1 Year</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Case</td>
<td>90 Days</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other Tablet Accessories</td>
<td>1 Year</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

What is not covered?
This Limited Warranty does not cover: (a) defects or damage resulting from accident, misuse, abnormal use, abnormal conditions, improper storage, exposure to liquid, moisture, dampness, sand or dirt, neglect, or unusual physical, electrical or electromechanical stress; (b) scratches, dents and cosmetic damage, unless caused by SAMSUNG; (c) defects or damage resulting from excessive force or use of a metallic object when pressing on a touch screen; (d) equipment that has the serial number or the enhancement data code removed, defaced, damaged, altered or made illegible; (e) ordinary wear and tear; (f) defects or damage resulting from the use of Product in conjunction or connection with accessories, products, or ancillary/peripheral equipment not furnished or approved by SAMSUNG; (g) defects or damage resulting from improper testing, operation, maintenance, installation, service, or adjustment not furnished or approved by SAMSUNG; (h) defects or damage resulting from external causes such as collision with an object, fire, flooding, dirt, windstorm, lightning, earthquake, exposure to weather conditions, theft, blown fuse, or improper use of any electrical source; (i) defects or damage resulting from cellular signal reception...
or transmission, or viruses or other software problems introduced into the Product; or (j) Product used or purchased outside the United States. This Limited Warranty covers batteries only if battery capacity falls below 80% of rated capacity or the battery leaks, and this Limited Warranty does not cover any battery if (i) the battery has been charged by a battery charger not specified or approved by SAMSUNG for charging the battery; (ii) any of the seals on the battery are broken or show evidence of tampering; or (iii) the battery has been used in equipment other than the SAMSUNG Tablet for which it is specified.

What are SAMSUNG’s obligations?
During the applicable warranty period, provided the Product is returned in accordance with the terms of this Limited Warranty, SAMSUNG will repair or replace the Product, without charge to Purchaser, or at SAMSUNG’s sole option, refund the purchase price.

SAMSUNG may, at SAMSUNG’s sole option, use rebuilt, reconditioned, or new parts or components when repairing any Product, or may replace Product with a rebuilt, reconditioned or new Product. Repaired/replaced cases will be warranted for a period of ninety (90) days. All other repaired/replaced Products will be warranted for a period equal to the remainder of the original Limited Warranty on the original Product or for ninety (90) days, whichever is longer. All replaced Products, parts, components, boards and equipment shall become the property of SAMSUNG. This Limited Warranty is extended to the Purchaser and is not transferable or assignable to any other person or entity.

What must you do to obtain warranty service?
To obtain service under this Limited Warranty, Purchaser must return the Product to an authorized Tablet service facility in an adequate container for shipping, accompanied by the sales receipt or comparable proof of sale showing the original date of purchase, the serial number of the Product and the seller’s name and address.

To obtain assistance on where to deliver the Product, please call SAMSUNG Customer Care at 1-800-SAMSUNG. If SAMSUNG determines that any Product is not covered by this Limited Warranty, Purchaser must pay all parts, shipping, and labor charges for the repair or return of such Product. Purchaser should keep a separate backup copy of any contents of the Product before delivering the Product to SAMSUNG for warranty service, as some or all of the contents may be deleted or reformatted during the course of warranty service.
What are the limits on SAMSUNG's liability?

THIS LIMITED WARRANTY SETS OUT THE FULL EXTENT OF SAMSUNG'S RESPONSIBILITIES, AND THE EXCLUSIVE REMEDY REGARDING THE PRODUCTS. ALL IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, ARE LIMITED TO THE DURATION OF THIS LIMITED WARRANTY.

IN NO EVENT SHALL SAMSUNG BE LIABLE FOR DAMAGES IN EXCESS OF THE PURCHASE PRICE OF THE PRODUCT OR FOR, WITHOUT LIMITATION, COMMERCIAL LOSS OF ANY SORT; LOSS OF USE, TIME, DATA, REPUTATION, OPPORTUNITY, GOODWILL, PROFITS OR SAVINGS; INCONVENIENCE; INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL OR PUNITIVE DAMAGES; OR DAMAGES ARISING FROM THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE PRODUCT. SOME STATES AND JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW LIMITATIONS ON HOW LONG AN IMPLIED WARRANTY LASTS, OR THE DISCLAIMER OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS AND DISCLAIMERS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

SAMSUNG MAKES NO WARRANTIES OR REPRESENTATIONS, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, STATUTORY OR OTHERWISE, AS TO THE QUALITY, CAPABILITIES, OPERATIONS, PERFORMANCE OR SUITABILITY OF ANY THIRD-PARTY SOFTWARE OR EQUIPMENT USED IN CONJUNCTION WITH THE PRODUCT, OR THE ABILITY TO INTEGRATE ANY SUCH SOFTWARE OR EQUIPMENT WITH THE PRODUCT, WHETHER SUCH THIRD-PARTY SOFTWARE OR EQUIPMENT IS INCLUDED WITH THE PRODUCT DISTRIBUTED BY SAMSUNG OR OTHERWISE. RESPONSIBILITY FOR THE QUALITY, CAPABILITIES, OPERATIONS, PERFORMANCE AND SUITABILITY OF ANY SUCH THIRD-PARTY SOFTWARE OR EQUIPMENT RESTS SOLELY WITH THE PURCHASER AND THE DIRECT VENDOR, OWNER OR SUPPLIER OF SUCH THIRD-PARTY SOFTWARE OR EQUIPMENT.

Nothing in the Product instructions or information shall be construed to create an express warranty of any kind with respect to the Products. No agent, employee, dealer, representative or reseller is authorized to modify or extend this Limited Warranty or to make binding representations or claims, whether in advertising, presentations or otherwise, on behalf of SAMSUNG regarding the Products or this Limited Warranty.
This Limited Warranty gives you specific legal rights, and you may also have other rights that vary from state to state.

**What is the procedure for resolving disputes?**

ALL DISPUTES WITH SAMSUNG ARISING IN ANY WAY FROM THIS LIMITED WARRANTY OR THE SALE, CONDITION OR PERFORMANCE OF THE PRODUCTS SHALL BE RESOLVED EXCLUSIVELY THROUGH FINAL AND BINDING ARBITRATION, AND NOT BY A COURT OR JURY. Any such dispute shall not be combined or consolidated with a dispute involving any other person's or entity's Product or claim, and specifically, without limitation of the foregoing, shall not under any circumstances proceed as part of a class action.

The arbitration shall be conducted before a single arbitrator, whose award may not exceed, in form or amount, the relief allowed by the applicable law. The arbitration shall be conducted according to the American Arbitration Association (AAA) Commercial Arbitration Rules applicable to consumer disputes. This arbitration provision is entered pursuant to the Federal Arbitration Act. The laws of the State of Texas, without reference to its choice of laws principles, shall govern the interpretation of the Limited Warranty and all disputes that are subject to this arbitration provision. The arbitrator shall decide all issues of interpretation and application of this arbitration provision and the Limited Warranty.

For any arbitration in which your total damage claims, exclusive of attorney fees and expert witness fees, are $5,000.00 or less (“Small Claim”), the arbitrator may, if you prevail, award your reasonable attorney fees, expert witness fees and costs as part of any award, but may not grant SAMSUNG its attorney fees, expert witness fees or costs unless it is determined that the claim was brought in bad faith. In a Small Claim case, you shall be required to pay no more than half of the total administrative, facility and arbitrator fees, or $50.00 of such fees, whichever is less, and SAMSUNG shall pay the remainder of such fees. Administrative, facility and arbitrator fees for arbitrations in which your total damage claims, exclusive of attorney fees and expert witness fees, exceed $5,000.00 (“Large Claim”) shall be determined according to AAA rules. In a Large Claim case, the arbitrator may grant to the prevailing party, or apportion among the parties, reasonable attorney fees, expert witness fees and costs. Judgment may be entered on the arbitrator’s award in any court of competent jurisdiction.
This arbitration provision also applies to claims against SAMSUNG’s employees, representatives and affiliates if any such claim arises from the Product’s sale, condition or performance.

You may opt out of this dispute resolution procedure by providing notice to SAMSUNG no later than 30 calendar days from the date of the first consumer purchaser’s purchase of the Product. To opt out, you must send notice by e-mail to optout@sta.samsung.com, with the subject line: “Arbitration Opt Out.” You must include in the opt out e-mail (a) your name and address; (b) the date on which the Product was purchased; (c) the Product model name or model number; and (d) the IMEI or MEID or Serial Number, as applicable, if you have it (the IMEI or MEID or Serial Number can be found (i) on the Product box; (ii) on the Product information screen, which can be found under “Settings;” (iii) on a label on the back of the Product beneath the battery, if the battery is removable; and (iv) on the outside of the Product if the battery is not removable).

Alternatively, you may opt out by calling 1-888-987-4357 no later than 30 calendar days from the date of the first consumer purchaser’s purchase of the Product and providing the same information. These are the only two forms of notice that will be effective to opt out of this dispute resolution procedure. Opting out of this dispute resolution procedure will not affect the coverage of the Limited Warranty in any way, and you will continue to enjoy the benefits of the Limited Warranty.

Severability
If any portion of this Limited Warranty is held to be illegal or unenforceable, such partial illegality or unenforceability shall not affect the enforceability of the remainder of the Limited Warranty.

Precautions for Transfer and Disposal
If data stored on this device is deleted or reformatted using the standard methods, the data only appears to be removed on a superficial level, and it may be possible for someone to retrieve and reuse the data by means of special software.

To avoid unintended information leaks and other problems of this sort, it is recommended that the device be returned to Samsung’s Customer Care Center for an Extended File System (EFS) Clear which will eliminate all user memory and return all settings to default settings. Please contact the Samsung Customer Care Center for details.
Important! Please provide warranty information (proof of purchase) to Samsung’s Customer Care Center in order to provide this service at no charge. If the warranty has expired on the device, charges may apply.

Samsung Telecommunications America, LLC
1301 E. Lookout Drive
Richardson, Texas 75082
Phone: 1-800-SAMSUNG
Phone: 1-888-987-HELP (4357)
©2012 Samsung Telecommunications America. All rights reserved.

No reproduction in whole or in part allowed without prior written approval. Specifications and availability subject to change without notice. [111611]

End User License Agreement for Software

IMPORTANT. READ CAREFULLY: This End User License Agreement (“EULA”) is a legal agreement between you (either an individual or a single entity) and Samsung Electronics Co., Ltd. for software owned by Samsung Electronics Co., Ltd. and its affiliated companies and its third party suppliers and licensors that accompanies this EULA, which includes computer software and may include associated media, printed materials, “online” or electronic documentation (“Software”).

BY CLICKING THE “I ACCEPT” BUTTON (OR IF YOU BYPASS OR OTHERWISE DISABLE THE “I ACCEPT”, AND STILL INSTALL, COPY, DOWNLOAD, ACCESS OR OTHERWISE USE THE SOFTWARE), YOU AGREE TO BE BOUND BY THE TERMS OF THIS EULA. IF YOU DO NOT ACCEPT THE TERMS IN THIS EULA, YOU MUST CLICK THE “DECLINE” BUTTON, AND DISCONTINUE USE OF THE SOFTWARE.

1. GRANT OF LICENSE. Samsung grants you the following rights provided that you comply with all terms and conditions of this EULA: You may install, use, access, display and run one copy of the Software on the local hard disk(s) or other permanent storage media of one computer and use the Software on a single computer or a mobile device at a time, and you may not make the Software available over a network where it could be used by multiple computers at the same time. You may make one copy of the Software in machine-readable form for backup purposes only; provided that the backup copy must include all copyright or other proprietary notices contained on the original.
2. RESERVATION OF RIGHTS AND OWNERSHIP. Samsung reserves all rights not expressly granted to you in this EULA. The Software is protected by copyright and other intellectual property laws and treaties. Samsung or its suppliers own the title, copyright and other intellectual property rights in the Software. The Software is licensed, not sold.

3. LIMITATIONS ON END USER RIGHTS. You may not reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, or otherwise attempt to discover the source code or algorithms of, the Software (except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation), or modify, or disable any features of, the Software, or create derivative works based on the Software. You may not rent, lease, lend, sublicense or provide commercial hosting services with the Software.

4. CONSENT TO USE OF DATA. You agree that Samsung and its affiliates may collect and use technical information gathered as part of the product support services related to the Software provided to you, if any, related to the Software. Samsung may use this information solely to improve its products or to provide customized services or technologies to you and will not disclose this information in a form that personally identifies you.

5. UPGRADES. This EULA applies to updates, supplements and add-on components (if any) of the Software that Samsung may provide to you or make available to you after the date you obtain your initial copy of the Software, unless we provide other terms along with such upgrade. To use Software identified as an upgrade, you must first be licensed for the Software identified by Samsung as eligible for the upgrade. After upgrading, you may no longer use the Software that formed the basis for your upgrade eligibility.

6. SOFTWARE TRANSFER. You may not transfer this EULA or the rights to the Software granted herein to any third party unless it is in connection with the sale of the mobile device which the Software accompanied. In such event, the transfer must include all of the Software (including all component parts, the media and printed materials, any upgrades, this EULA) and you may not retain any copies of the Software. The transfer may not be an indirect transfer, such as a consignment. Prior to the transfer, the end user receiving the Software must agree to all the EULA terms.

7. EXPORT RESTRICTIONS. You acknowledge that the Software is subject to export restrictions of various countries. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the Software, including the U.S.
Export Administration Regulations, as well as end user, end use, and destination restrictions issued by U.S. and other governments.

8. TERMINATION. This EULA is effective until terminated. Your rights under this License will terminate automatically without notice from Samsung if you fail to comply with any of the terms and conditions of this EULA. Upon termination of this EULA, you must cease all use of the Software and destroy all copies, full or partial, of the Software.

9. THIRD-PARTY APPLICATIONS. Certain third-party applications may be included with, or downloaded to this mobile device. SAMSUNG makes no representations whatsoever about any of these applications. Since SAMSUNG has no control over such applications, Purchaser acknowledges and agrees that SAMSUNG is not responsible for the availability of such applications and is not responsible or liable for any content, advertising, products, services, or other materials on or available from such applications. Purchaser expressly acknowledges and agrees that use of third-party applications is at Purchaser’s sole risk and that the entire risk of unsatisfactory quality, performance, accuracy and effort is with Purchaser. It is up to Purchaser to take precautions to ensure that whatever Purchaser selects to use is free of such items as viruses, worms, Trojan horses, and other items of a destructive nature. References on this mobile device to any names, marks, products, or services of any third-parties are provided solely as a convenience to Purchaser, and do not constitute or imply an endorsement, sponsorship, or recommendation of, or affiliation with the third-party or its products and services. Purchaser agrees that SAMSUNG shall not be responsible or liable, directly or indirectly, for any damage or loss caused or alleged to be caused by, or in connection with, use of or reliance on any such third-party content, products, or services available on or through any such application. Purchaser acknowledges and agrees that your use of any third-party application is governed by such third-party application provider’s Terms of Use, License Agreement, Privacy Policy, or other such agreement and that any information or personal data you provide, whether knowingly or unknowingly, to such third-party application provider, will be subject to such third-party application provider’s privacy policy, if such a policy exists. SAMSUNG DISCLAIMS ANY RESPONSIBILITY FOR ANY DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION OR ANY OTHER PRACTICES OF ANY THIRD-PARTY APPLICATION PROVIDER.

10. Disclaimer of Warranty Regarding Third-Party Applications. SAMSUNG DOES NOT WARRANT OR MAKE ANY REPRESENTATIONS REGARDING THE AVAILABILITY, USE,
TIMELINESS, SECURITY, VALIDITY, ACCURACY, OR RELIABILITY OF, OR THE RESULTS OF THE USE OF, OR OTHERWISE RESPECTING, THE CONTENT OF ANY THIRD-PARTY APPLICATION WHETHER SUCH THIRD-PARTY APPLICATION IS INCLUDED WITH THE PRODUCT DISTRIBUTED BY SAMSUNG, IS DOWNLOADED, OR OTHERWISE OBTAINED. USE OF ANY THIRD-PARTY APPLICATION IS DONE AT PURCHASER'S OWN DISCRETION AND RISK AND PURCHASER IS SOLELY RESPONSIBLE FOR ANY DAMAGE TO YOUR MOBILE DEVICE OR LOSS OF DATA THAT RESULTS FROM THE DOWNLOADING OR USE OF SUCH THIRD-PARTY APPLICATIONS. SAMSUNG EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS ANY WARRANTY REGARDING WHETHER PURCHASER'S PERSONAL INFORMATION IS CAPTURED BY ANY THIRD-PARTY APPLICATION PROVIDER OR THE USE TO WHICH SUCH PERSONAL INFORMATION MAY BE PUT BY SUCH THIRD-PARTY APPLICATION PROVIDER. ANY THIRD-PARTY APPLICATIONS PROVIDED WITH THIS MOBILE DEVICE ARE PROVIDED “AS IS” AND ON AN “AS AVAILABLE” BASIS, WITHOUT WARRANTIES OF ANY KIND FROM SAMSUNG, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED. TO THE FULLEST EXTENT POSSIBLE PURSUANT TO APPLICABLE LAW, SAMSUNG DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS, IMPLIED, OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, SATISFACTORY QUALITY OR WORKMANLIKE EFFORT, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, RELIABILITY OR AVAILABILITY, ACCURACY, LACK OF VIRUSES, QUIET ENJOYMENT, NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS OR OTHER VIOLATION OF RIGHTS. SAMSUNG DOES NOT WARRANT AGAINST INTERFERENCE WITH YOUR ENJOYMENT OF THE THIRD-PARTY APPLICATION, THAT THE FUNCTIONS CONTAINED IN THE THIRD-PARTY APPLICATION WILL MEET PURCHASER’S REQUIREMENTS, THAT THE OPERATION OF THE THIRD-PARTY APPLICATION WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED OR ERROR-FREE, OR THAT DEFECTS IN THE THIRD-PARTY APPLICATION WILL BE CORRECTED. PURCHASER ASSUMES THE ENTIRE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR, OR CORRECTION. SOME JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW EXCLUSIONS OR LIMITATIONS ON HOW LONG AN IMPLIED WARRANTY LASTS, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS OR EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU. NO ADVICE OR INFORMATION, WHETHER ORAL OR WRITTEN, OBTAINED BY PURCHASER FROM SAMSUNG SHALL BE DEEMED TO ALTER THIS DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTY REGARDING THIRD-PARTY APPLICATIONS, OR TO CREATE ANY WARRANTY.
11. Limitation of Liability. SAMSUNG WILL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY DAMAGES OF ANY KIND ARISING OUT OF OR RELATING TO THE USE OR THE INABILITY TO USE ANY THIRD-PARTY APPLICATION, ITS CONTENT OR FUNCTIONALITY, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO DAMAGES CAUSED BY OR RELATED TO ERRORS, OMISSIONS, INTERRUPTIONS, DEFECTS, DELAY IN OPERATION OR TRANSMISSION, COMPUTER VIRUS, FAILURE TO CONNECT, NETWORK CHARGES, AND ALL OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES EVEN IF SAMSUNG HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. SOME JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATION OR EXCLUSION MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU. NOTwithstanding the foregoing, SAMSUNG’S TOTAL LIABILITY TO PURCHASER FOR ALL LOSSES, DAMAGES, CAUSES OF ACTION, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THOSE BASED ON CONTRACT, TORT, OR OTHERWISE, ARISING OUT OF PURCHASER’S USE OF THIRD-PARTY APPLICATIONS ON THIS MOBILE DEVICE, OR ANY OTHER PROVISION OF THIS EULA, SHALL NOT EXCEED THE AMOUNT PURCHASER PAID SPECIFICALLY FOR ANY SUCH THIRD-PARTY APPLICATION THAT WAS INCLUDED WITH THIS MOBILE DEVICE. THE FOREGOING LIMITATIONS, EXCLUSIONS, AND DISCLAIMERS (INCLUDING SECTIONS 9, 10, AND 11) SHALL APPLY TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, EVEN IF ANY REMEDY FAILS ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE.

12. U.S. Government End Users Restricted Rights. The Software is licensed only with "restricted rights" and as "commercial items" consisting of "commercial software" and "commercial software documentation" with only those rights as are granted to all other end users pursuant to the terms and conditions herein. All Software and Products provided to the United States Government pursuant to solicitations issued on or after December 1, 1995 is provided with the commercial rights and restrictions described elsewhere herein. All Software and Products provided to the United States Government pursuant to solicitations issued prior to December 1, 1995 are provided with RESTRICTED RIGHTS as provided for in FAR, 48 CFR 52.227-14 (JUNE 1987) or DFAR, 48 CFR 252.227-7013 (OCT 1988), as applicable.

13. APPLICABLE LAW. This EULA is governed by the laws of TEXAS, without regard to conflicts of laws principles. This EULA shall not be governed by the UN Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, the application of which is expressly excluded. If a dispute, controversy or
difference is not amicably settled, it shall be finally resolved by arbitration in Seoul, Korea in accordance with the Arbitration Rules of the Korean Commercial Arbitration Board. The award of arbitration shall be final and binding upon the parties.

14. ENTIRE AGREEMENT; SEVERABILITY. This EULA is the entire agreement between you and Samsung relating to the Software and supersedes all prior or contemporaneous oral or written communications, proposals and representations with respect to the Software or any other subject matter covered by this EULA. If any provision of this EULA is held to be void, invalid, unenforceable or illegal, the other provisions shall continue in full force and effect.

Social Hub

Legal Terms and Privacy

Samsung’s Social Hub and (if applicable) the website where you accessed this Disclaimer (collectively, the "Service"), is being made available to you by Samsung Electronics Co., Ltd., and its affiliates and suppliers (collectively "Samsung") subject to the following enclosed documents:

- Social Hub Terms and Conditions which governs your use of the Service generally;
- Social Hub End User License Agreement which specifically governs your use of the software which forms part of, or enables you to access, the Service; and
- Social Hub Privacy Policy which governs our collection and use of personal information in connection with your access to and use of the Service.

By using the Service, you agree to be bound by the above documents. Please read through those documents to make sure you understand the basis on which Samsung is providing the Service to you.

You will be able to access additional features available at socialhub.samsungmobile.com.

Social Hub Terms and Conditions

Acceptance of the Terms

These Social Hub Terms and Conditions together with the Social Hub Privacy Policy and Social Hub End User Licence Agreement (collectively "Terms") govern your use of Social Hub, which comprises all content and services accessible through Social Hub (including third party content and services), and (if applicable) the website where you accessed these Terms (collectively the "Service"). The Terms constitute an agreement between you and Samsung
Electronics Co., Ltd., and its affiliates (collectively "Samsung") with respect to the Service. By using the Service, you agree to be legally bound to the Terms.

You are not allowed to use the Service if you do not agree to the Terms. To the extent permitted by applicable law, Samsung reserves the right to modify, update, supplement, revise or otherwise change the Terms, and to impose new or additional rules, policies, terms or conditions in relation to the Service, from time to time with or without notice to you ("Amendments").

Samsung may provide you with notice of the Amendments by sending an email message to the email address listed in your account information (if any), or by posting the notice on the Social Hub website.

Such Amendments will be effective immediately and incorporated into the Terms upon sending or posting of such notice. You are responsible for regularly reviewing the Terms. Your continued use of the Service will be deemed to constitute your acceptance of any and all such Amendments.

Eligibility

To use the Service, you must be at least sixteen (16) years of age. If you are at least sixteen (16) years of age but are a minor for legal purposes where you live, you must review the Terms and have your parent or legal guardian accept the Terms on your behalf in order for you to use the Service. The person accepting the Terms on your behalf must be legally competent.

Your Information

When required to provide information in connection with your use of the Service, you agree to provide truthful and complete information. Providing misleading information about your identity is forbidden. When you first use the Service, you may be required to create a username and a password.

You (and your parent or legal guardian, if you are a minor) are personally responsible for any use of the Service with your username and password.

You agree to take due care in protecting your username and password against misuse by others and promptly notify Samsung about any misuse.

Termination of Service

Samsung may terminate or restrict your access to certain parts of the Service if there is an indication that you have breached the Terms or at any time in its sole discretion.
Your Material

Except as set forth in the Social Hub Privacy Policy, Samsung shall not be responsible for any removal of the information or content you have submitted in the course of using the Service ("Material") when your access to the Service is terminated. Your submission of Material in the course of using the Service does not transfer ownership rights in the Material to Samsung. After the Material is removed from the Service by either you or Samsung, some traces of the Material may remain and copies of the Material may still reside within the servers used in providing the Service. However, Samsung does not claim ownership in your Material.

You represent and warrant that you have obtained any consents, permission or licenses that may be required for you to have the legal right to submit any Material. Samsung reserves the right to terminate your access to the Service if Samsung determines, at its sole discretion, that you have repeatedly submitted infringing Materials to the Service.

Using the Service

You agree to:

• Use the Service only for your private, non-commercial purposes;
• Comply with applicable laws, the Terms and good manners;
• Not submit unlawful, offensive, abusive, pornographic, harassing, libelous or other inappropriate Material;
• Respect the privacy of others;
• Obtain any consents, permission or licenses that may be required for you to have the legal right to submit any Material; and
• Not distribute or post spam, unreasonably large files, chain letters, pyramid schemes, viruses or any other technologies that may harm the Service, or the interest or property of the Service users.

Unauthorized use of the Service (including any use in contravention of the Terms) is prohibited and may result in criminal prosecution and/or civil liability.

Restrictions

You and any third party directed by You must not display, copy, store, modify, sell, publish or redistribute the Service (whether all or any portion of it), and such displaying, copying, storing, modification, sale, publishing and redistribution shall be prohibited unless you have obtained all necessary rights and permissions from Samsung and the owners and right holders of such the Service or relevant part.
You must not use the Service for any purposes other than those permitted under the Terms. Without limiting this restriction, you must not use the service for any illegal purposes, to make unsolicited offers or advertisements, to impersonate or falsely claim affiliation with any person or entity, to misrepresent, harass, defraud or defame others, to post obscene or unreasonably offensive material, to negatively present the Service, nor for any commercial purposes.

Except as expressly permitted by the Terms, and except to the extent that applicable laws prevent Samsung from restraining you from doing so, you are not allowed to disassemble, reverse engineer, tamper with the Service, transmit malicious code or collect information of other users through the Service.

You may not take any action to interrupt the functionality of or tamper with the Service or any content or service contained in or provided through the Service, or any servers used in providing the Service, or to unreasonably affect others' enjoyment of the Service in any way.

**Actions Required by Law**

Samsung may need to comply with lawful interception and/or data retention requirements imposed by your country of residence or any other country in which you use the Service. Samsung may restrict access to any part of the Service or terminate your access to the Service, at any time in its sole discretion if required by law or by the relevant authorities or regulatory agencies to do so.

**Third Party Sites and Content**

The Service may allow access to sites on the Internet that are owned or operated by third parties. Access to such sites does not imply that Samsung endorses the site or the conduct, products or services on the site. Upon accessing any such site, you must review and agree to the rules of use of the relevant site before using the site.

You acknowledge and agree that Samsung has no control over the content, products or services of third-party sites and does not assume any responsibility for or in respect of such content, products or services. Third party content and services may be terminated or interrupted at any time, and Samsung makes no representation or warranty that any content or service will remain available for any period of
time. Samsung expressly disclaims any responsibility or liability for any interruption or suspension of any third party content or service.

In addition, Samsung is neither responsible nor liable for customer service related to third party sites. Any question or request for service relating to third party sites should be made directly to the relevant site operator.

**Subscription Information**

Use of the Service may involve transmission of data through your service provider’s network. Your network service provider may charge you for such data transmission. Samsung assumes no responsibility for the payment of any such charges.

**Availability**

The Service may be network dependent - contact your network service provider for more information. Samsung reserves the right, in its sole discretion, to change, improve and correct the Service. The Service may not be available during maintenance breaks and other times. Samsung may also decide to discontinue the Service or any part thereof in its sole discretion. In such case you will be provided with prior notification.

Samsung does not represent or warrant that the Service, or any part thereof, is appropriate or available for use in any particular jurisdiction. If you choose to access the Service, you do so on your own initiative and at your own risk, and you are responsible for complying with all US federal, state and local laws, rules and regulations.

**Dealings with Others**

You may interact with other users on or through the Service. You agree that any such interactions do not involve Samsung and are solely between you and the other user(s).

**Intellectual Property**

The Service and related software are protected under international copyright laws and you are hereby notified that copyrights are claimed by Samsung. Subject to the Terms, Samsung retains all right, title and interest in the Service and in all Samsung’s products, software and other properties provided to you or used by you through the Service.

**Personal Data**

The Social Hub Privacy Policy and the following additional provisions govern the use of your personal information. When you access the Service, Samsung may ask for or otherwise
collect certain personal information such as your email address along with your user name and password and, in certain cases, your mobile phone number so that we can communicate with you, for example to send notifications of incoming messages. When you use the Service, certain technical information such as the type and serial number of your mobile device, Internet protocol address, your mobile network and country codes, timezone, technical details of your client as well as your transactions with Samsung, for example your acceptance of the Terms, will be automatically collected by Samsung.

The purposes for which Samsung may use such data are explained in the Social Hub Privacy Policy. Samsung may also participate with your selected service providers in maintaining your contact lists.

The third party services and content you access through the Service and the telecommunications carriers and the network through which you access the Service are provided and hosted by your selected third party content and service providers who typically has a privacy policy of its own. We recommend you familiarize yourself with your service provider’s privacy policy. Samsung is not responsible for the privacy or any other practices of such service providers. Although your messages will be transmitted through Samsung’s servers, Samsung will not process the content or headers of your messages for any purpose other than as necessary to deliver and manage your messages, unless otherwise required by law.

In connection with certain services accessible via the Service, Samsung may cooperate with your operator and other third parties. Samsung may receive from such third parties certain device specific non-personal information, such as device serial number of the devices sold by the operator with preinstalled software for the Service. Such information may be used for analyzing the activation of the Service.

**LIMITATION OF LIABILITY**

THE SERVICE IS PROVIDED ON "AS IS" AND "AS AVAILABLE" BASIS. TO THE FULLEST EXTENT PERMITTED BY THE LAW AND SUBJECT TO THE TERMS, SAMSUNG DOES NOT WARRANT THAT THE SERVICE WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED OR ERROR OR VIRUS-FREE.

TO THE FULLEST EXTENT PERMITTED BY THE LAW AND SUBJECT TO THE TERMS, NO WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO WARRANTIES OF TITLE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS
FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, IS MADE IN RELATION TO THE AVAILABILITY, ACCURACY, RELIABILITY, OF THE SERVICE, INCLUDING ANY INFORMATION OR CONTENT PROVIDED THROUGH THE SERVICE. YOU EXPRESSLY AGREE AND ACKNOWLEDGE THAT THE USE OF THE SERVICE IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT YOU MAY BE EXPOSED TO CONTENT FROM VARIOUS SOURCES.

SAMSUNG SHALL NOT BE HELD RESPONSIBLE FOR ANY THIRD PARTY CONTENT OR SERVICE THAT MAY BE ACCESSED THROUGH THE SERVICE, NOR SHALL SAMSUNG BE HELD RESPONSIBLE FOR MALICIOUS CODE CONTAINED ON OR DISTRIBUTED THROUGH BY THIRD PARTIES.

YOU ASSUME FULL RESPONSIBILITY FOR ANY DAMAGES, LOSSES, COSTS, OR HARM ARISING FROM YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE SERVICE. TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY LAW, EXCEPT FOR LIABILITY FOR DEATH OR PERSONAL INJURY CAUSED BY GROSS NEGLIGENCE OR INTENTIONAL MISCONDUCT, SAMSUNG DISCLAIMS ALL LIABILITIES WITH RESPECT TO YOUR USE OF THE SERVICE (INCLUDING DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, PUNITIVE OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES).

IF THERE IS A CLAIM THAT WE HAVE BREACHED ANY OF THE PROVISIONS IN THE TERMS, THIS DOES NOT AFFECT OR INVALIDATE THE OTHER PROVISIONS.

CERTAIN STATUTORY PROVISIONS UNDER APPLICABLE LAW MAY IMPLY WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS OR IMPOSE OBLIGATIONS UPON SAMSUNG WHICH CANNOT BE EXCLUDED, RESTRICTED OR MODIFIED OR CANNOT BE EXCLUDED, RESTRICTED OR MODIFIED EXCEPT TO A LIMITED EXTENT. THE TERMS MUST BE READ SUBJECT TO THESE STATUTORY PROVISIONS. IF THESE STATUTORY PROVISIONS APPLY, TO THE EXTENT TO WHICH SAMSUNG IS ABLE TO DO SO, SAMSUNG LIMITS ITS LIABILITY UNDER THOSE PROVISIONS TO, AT ITS OPTION, IN THE CASE OF SERVICES (A) THE SUPPLYING OF THE SERVICES AGAIN; OR (B) THE PAYMENT OF THE COST OF HAVING THE SERVICES SUPPLIED AGAIN AND, IN THE CASE OF GOODS, (A) THE REPLACEMENT OF THE GOODS OR THE SUPPLY OF EQUIVALENT GOODS; (B) THE REPAIR OF THE GOODS; (C) THE PAYMENT OF THE COST OF REPLACING THE GOODS OR OF ACQUIRING EQUIVALENT GOODS; OR (D) THE PAYMENT OF THE COST OF HAVING THE GOODS REPAIRED.
**Indemnification**

You agree to defend, indemnify and hold harmless Samsung from and against any and all third party claims and all liabilities, assessments, losses, costs or damages resulting from or arising out of i) your breach of the Terms, ii) your infringement or violation of any intellectual property, other rights or privacy of a third party, iii) misuse of the Service by a third party where such misuse was made possible due to your failure to take reasonable measures to protect your username and password against misuse.

**Choice of Law**

Except where prohibited by applicable law or provided otherwise herein, the Terms shall be governed by the laws of the State of New York without regard to its conflict of law provisions.

You and Samsung agree to submit to the non-exclusive jurisdiction of the competent courts in the State of New York to resolve any legal matters arising from the Terms. Notwithstanding this, you agree that Samsung shall still be allowed to apply for injunctive remedies (or equivalent type of urgent legal relief) in any jurisdiction.

**Miscellaneous**

The Terms (including all documents comprising the Terms) constitute the entire agreement between you and Samsung, and supersedes any prior agreement between you and Samsung, with respect to your use of the Service. Your use of any third-party content or service accessed via the Service will be governed by the terms and conditions furnished with, and applicable to that content or service. If any provision of the Terms is held invalid, illegal or unenforceable, that portion of the Terms shall be construed in a manner consistent with applicable law to reflect, as nearly as possible, the original intentions of the parties, and the remaining portion of the Terms shall remain in full force and effect. Samsung’s failure to enforce any right or provision of the Terms will not constitute a waiver of such provision, or any other provision of the Terms. Samsung will not be liable or responsible for any failure to fulfill any of its obligations under the Terms which failure is due to any cause or condition beyond the reasonable control of Samsung. If there is any conflict between these Social Hub Terms and Conditions and the Social Hub Privacy Policy, the provisions of these Social Hub Terms and Conditions shall
prevail. The provisions of the Terms that are intended to or by their nature should survive termination of your use of the Service shall remain valid after any such termination.

Social Hub Privacy Policy

Samsung Electronics Co., Ltd. ("Samsung") is committed to protecting the online privacy of visitors, users and customers to our Social Hub service. This privacy policy ("Privacy Policy") forms part of the Terms which govern your use of Social Hub(excluding any third party content and services), and (if applicable) the website where you accessed this Privacy Policy, (collectively, the "Service"). The purpose of the Privacy Policy is to inform you about the types of information we gather about you when you access or use the Service, how we may use that information, and if and how we disclose it to third parties.

All users of the Service are required to provide true, current, complete and accurate personal information when prompted and we will reject and delete any entry that we believe in good faith to be incorrect, false, falsified, or fraudulent, or inconsistent with or in violation of the Privacy Policy.

We will provide you with an opportunity to give your consent in relation to your use of the Service. Separate from such consent, your access or use of the Service will be construed as your acceptance of the Privacy Policy and of our collection, use, disclosure, management and storage of your personal information as described below. We may, from time to time, transfer or merge any personal information collected off-line to our online databases or store off-line information in an electronic format. We may also combine personal information we collect online with information available from other sources, including information received from our affiliates, marketing companies, or advertisers. This Privacy Policy covers all such personal information and will remain in full force and effect as long as you are a user of the Service, even if your use of or participation in any particular service, feature, function or promotional activity terminates, expires, ceases, is suspended or deactivated for any reason.

INFORMATION THAT WE COLLECT

Personal Information

We may request that you supply us with "personal" information, such as your name, e-mail address, mailing address, home or work telephone number in the course of your accessing or using the Service, such as via registration forms, surveys, and polls. In each such case, you will know what categories of information we collect because you will actively provide the information to us. You may not be able to
fully utilize all of the features or components of the Service if you choose not to provide certain information. If you do choose to give us personal information through the Service, we will collect and retain that information.

**Non-Personal Information**

When you use the Service, we may also collect "non-personal" information. We consider "non-personal information" to be information that, by itself, cannot be used to identify or contact you personally, such as demographic information (your age, gender, income, education, profession, zip code, etc.). Non-personal information may also include technical information, such as your IP address and other anonymous data involving your use of the Service. Non-personal information may also include information that you provide us through your use of the Service, such as the terms you enter into the search functions of Social Hub, mail inbox and instant messenger. We reserve the right to use or disclose non-personal information in any way we see fit.

**USE OF INFORMATION WE COLLECT**

**Our Services**

We use your personal information to provide you with any services that you may request or require, to communicate with you and to allow you to participate in online surveys. We use aggregated non-personal information about our users to understand the demographics of users of the Service, such as the percentage of male and female users, the geographic distribution of our users, the age ranges of our users, a combination of these and/or other demographics. We may also use the personal or non-personal information we collect to analyze how Service is being used, and to improve the content of the Service, and for marketing and promotional efforts.

**E-mail Communications**

If you send us an e-mail with questions or comments, we may use your personal information to respond to your questions or comments, and we may save your questions or comments for future reference. Aside from our reply to such an e-mail, it is not our standard practice to send you e-mail unless you request a particular service that involves e-mail communications. However, you consent to us contacting you by e-mail, and sending you information about products and services which we believe may be of interest to you. You may have the opportunity to subscribe to an electronic newsletter in which case information about the Service or our advertisers will be sent to your e-mail address. We will provide you with the option to change your preferences and opt-out of receiving those communications. You may request
at any time that we not e-mail you in future by clicking the "unsubscribe" link which is included at the bottom of any e-mail that you receive from us. If you unsubscribe, we will make reasonable efforts to discontinue e-mail communications to you as soon as practicable.

**DISCLOSURE OF INFORMATION TO THIRD PARTIES**

**Aggregate Information**

Except as specifically set forth in this Privacy Policy, we do not share your personal information with any third party without your permission. We may disclose aggregate information, such as demographic information, and our statistical analyses to third parties, including advertisers or other business partners. This aggregate information does not include your personal information.

**Service Providers**

We sometimes engage unaffiliated businesses to assist us in providing you certain services. For example, we may use third parties to provide advertising, marketing and promotional assistance, provide e-mail services, or facilitate our online services. In those instances, we may need to share your personal information with them.

We require these companies to use your personal information only to provide the particular product or service and do not authorize them to use your personal information for any other reason. We sometimes offer promotions in conjunction with a third party sponsor.

If you choose to participate in those promotions, we may share your information with the sponsor if they need it to send you a product or other special promotion they offer.

**Third Party Advertisers**

We may use third-party advertising companies to deliver specific advertisements to you. These companies may collect non-personal information about your visits to Social Hub in order to provide advertisements about products and services that may be of interest to you.

These companies may also aggregate your non-personal information for use in targeted advertising, marketing research, and other similar purposes. These companies may place their own cookies on your computer. If you want to prevent a third-party advertiser from collecting and using this information, you may visit each third party advertiser's website directly and opt-out.
Other Disclosures

We may disclose personal information when we are required or requested to do so by law, court order or other government or law enforcement authority or regulatory agency; to enforce or apply our rights and agreements; or when we believe in good faith that disclosing this information is necessary or advisable, including, for example, to protect the rights, property, or safety of the Service and Samsung, our users, or others.

CHILDREN

The Service is not designed for use by children without their parent’s supervision. We ask that anyone under the age of sixteen (16) not submit any personal information through the Service. We do not knowingly collect any personal information from children under the age of eighteen, and therefore we do not knowingly distribute such information to third parties.

SECURITY OF THE INFORMATION WE COLLECT

The security of your personal information is important to us. We maintain physical, electronic, and procedural safeguards to secure your personal information. However, there is always some risk in transmitting information electronically. The personal information we collect is stored within databases that we control.

As we deem appropriate, we use security measures consistent with industry standards, such as firewalls and encryption technology, to protect your information. However, we cannot guarantee the security of our databases, nor can we guarantee that information you supply won’t be intercepted while being transmitted to us over the Internet.

CHAT ROOMS AND OTHER PUBLIC AREAS

Our third party service and content providers may offer chat, user reviews, bulletin boards, or other public functions and any posting by you is considered public information available to other users. Any posting is governed in accordance with the third party service and content providers' terms and conditions. You should take care not to use personal information in your screen name or other information that might be publicly available to other users.

Archived Information

We maintain archives of web logs, database, and other systems and information in relation to the Service. Please note that it is possible some of this information may remain
archived after we delete the information from its active database. We maintain archives for disaster recovery, legal and other non-marketing purposes.

**How can I update my profile?**

You can help us maintain the accuracy of your profile by notifying us when you change zip/postal code, country of residence, age range, or e-mail address. If at any time you wish to update your information or stop receiving communication from us, sign in to the Service and then select 'update your profile' to change your preferences.

**CONTESTS AND SWEEPSTAKES**

Registration may be required to enter promotions such as contests and sweepstakes on Social Hub. These registration or entry processes may require your submission of personal information such as your first and last name, street address, city, state and zip code, e-mail address, telephone number and date of birth. The entry page and/or rules for the promotion will provide the specific requirements for the promotion. You may also have the opportunity to opt-in to special offers from our advertisers in connection with these promotions.

**ACCURACY OF THE INFORMATION WE COLLECT**

Any questions you may have regarding this Privacy Policy, the accuracy of your personal information or the use of your personal information, or any requests that we correct, update, or remove your information in our databases, should be directed via e-mail to s.dufresne@Samsung.com, or via regular mail to:

Samsung Telecommunications America, LLC
1301 E. Lookout Drive, Richardson, TX 75082
Attn: Customer Support Department

After receiving a request to change your information, we will make reasonable efforts to ensure that all of your personal information stored in databases we actively use to operate the Service will be updated, corrected, changed or deleted, as appropriate, as soon as reasonably practicable. However, we reserve the right to retain in our archival files any information we remove from or change in our active databases. We may retain such information to resolve disputes, troubleshoot problems and enforce our Terms.
In addition, it is not technologically possible to remove each and every record of the information you have provided to us. A copy of your personal information may exist in a non-erasable form that will be difficult or impossible for us to locate.

**CHANGES TO PRIVACY POLICY**

This Privacy Policy is effective as of May 29, 2010 and complies with Samsung's Corporate Privacy Policy. We reserve the right to change this Privacy Policy at any time, and will post any such changes to this Privacy Policy on the Social Hub website. Please refer back to the Social Hub website on a regular basis to obtain the most up to date Privacy Policy.

**Social Hub End User License Agreement**

1. **SOCIAL HUB**

This end user license ("License") allows you to use Social Hub ("Software") made available on your mobile device. This License is a legally binding agreement between you and Samsung Electronics Co. Ltd. the ("Licensor").

2. **LICENSE**

2.1 Licensor grants you for the term of this License a limited, personal, non-exclusive, non-transferable license to use the Software in object code executable only form on a single device for non-commercial uses.

2.2 All rights not expressly granted to you under this License are reserved to Licensor, and you agree not to take or permit any action with respect to the Software that is not expressly authorised under this License. For the avoidance of doubt, you have no right to use, incorporate into other products, copy, modify, translate or transfer to any third party the Software or any modification, adaptation or copy of the Software or any part thereof, nor to decompile, reverse engineer, or disassemble the binary code of the Software, either in whole or in part, except as expressly provided in this License.

2.3 The Software is licensed to you only. You may not rent, lease, sub-license, sell, assign, pledge, transfer or otherwise dispose of the Software, on a temporary or permanent basis without the prior written consent of Licensor.
3. OWNERSHIP OF INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS

3.1 Your only right to use the Software is by virtue of this License and you acknowledge that all intellectual property rights in or relating to the Software and all parts of the Software are and shall remain the exclusive property of Licensor or its licensors.

3.2 You agree that you will not remove or alter any copyright notices or similar proprietary devices, including without limitation any electronic watermarks or other identifiers, that may be incorporated in the Software or any copy of the Software.

4. CONFIDENTIALITY

4.1 The structure, organisation and source code of the Software are the valuable trade secrets and proprietary confidential information of Licensor and its licensors. You agree not to provide or disclose any such confidential information in the Software or derived from it to any third party.

4.2 The provisions of clause 4.1 will not apply to any information which is:

4.2.1 lawfully obtained free of any duty of confidentiality (otherwise than directly or indirectly from Licensor); or

4.2.2 already in your possession, provided that Licensee can show such possession from written records (other than as a result of a breach of this clause 4); or

4.2.3 which you can demonstrate is in the public domain (other than as a result of a breach of this clause 4).

4.3 To the extent that any information is necessarily disclosed pursuant to a statutory or regulatory obligation or court order, such disclosure shall not be a breach of this clause 4 provided you do what you can to prevent any such disclosure.

5. WARRANTY AND SUPPORT

The Software is provided "as is" with no representation, guarantee or warranty of any kind as to its functionality or that it does not and will not infringe any third party rights (including intellectual property rights). Licensor has no obligation under this License to provide technical or other support to you.

6. LIMITATION AND EXCLUSION OF LIABILITY

6.1 Licensor does not exclude its liability (if any) to you:

6.1.1 for personal injury or death resulting from Licensor's negligence;

6.1.2 for fraud; or
6.1.3 for any matter for which it would be illegal for Licensor to exclude or to attempt to exclude its liability.

6.2 LICENSOR MAKES NO EXPRESS WARRANTIES WITH RESPECT TO THE SOFTWARE AND LICENSOR HEREBY EXCLUDES (TO THE FULLEST EXTENT PERMISSIBLE IN LAW), ALL CONDITIONS, WARRANTIES (INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION ANY WARRANTY THAT THE SOFTWARE WILL MEET YOUR REQUIREMENTS OR THAT ITS OPERATION WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED OR ERROR FREE) AND STIPULATIONS, EXPRESS (OTHER THAN THOSE SET OUT IN THIS LICENSE) OR IMPLIED, STATUTORY, CUSTOMARY OR OTHERWISE WHICH, BUT FOR SUCH EXCLUSION, WOULD OR MIGHT SUBSIST IN FAVOUR OF YOU. EXCEPT AS SET OUT IN THIS LICENSE YOU ASSUME THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO THE QUALITY AND PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE.

6.3 SUBJECT TO CLAUSE 6.1 LICENSOR WILL BE UNDER NO LIABILITY TO YOU WHATSOEVER (WHETHER IN CONTRACT, TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE), BREACH OF STATUTORY DUTY, RESTITUTION OR OTHERWISE) FOR ANY INJURY, DEATH, DAMAGE OR DIRECT, INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL LOSS (ALL THREE OF WHICH TERMS INCLUDE, WITHOUT LIMITATION, PURE ECONOMIC LOSS, LOSS OF PROFITS, LOSS OF BUSINESS, LOSS OF DATA, LOSS OF SAVINGS, DEPLETION OF GOODWILL AND LIKE LOSS) HOWSOEVER CAUSED ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH:

6.3.1 THE SOFTWARE, OR THE MANUFACTURE OR SALE OR SUPPLY, OR FAILURE OR DELAY IN SUPPLY, OF THE SOFTWARE BY LICENSOR OR ON THE PART OF LICENSOR’S EMPLOYEES, AGENTS OR SUB-CONTRACTORS;

6.3.2 ANY BREACH BY LICENSOR OF ANY OF THE EXPRESS OR IMPLIED TERMS OF THIS LICENSE;

6.3.3 ANY USE MADE OF THE SOFTWARE; OR

6.3.4 ANY STATEMENT MADE OR NOT MADE, OR ADVICE GIVEN OR NOT GIVEN, BY OR ON BEHALF OF LICENSOR.

6.4 Disclaimer of Certain Damages. IN NO EVENT SHALL SAMSUNG BE LIABLE TO YOU OR ANY PARTY RELATED TO YOU FOR ANY INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR PUNITIVE DAMAGES OR LOST PROFITS, EVEN IF SAMSUNG HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. THIS LIMITATION WILL APPLY REGARDLESS OF THE THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER FRAUD, MISREPRESENTATION, BREACH OF CONTRACT, NEGLIGENCE, PERSONAL INJURY, PRODUCTS LIABILITY, INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY INFRINGEMENT, OR ANY OTHER THEORY REGARDLESS OF WHETHER OR NOT SAMSUNG HAS
BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. THIS MEANS THAT YOU WILL NOT SEEK, AND HEREBY WAIVE, ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, TREBLE, OR PUNITIVE DAMAGES FROM SAMSUNG. THIS LIMITATION AND WAIVER ALSO APPLIES TO ANY CLAIMS YOU MAY BRING AGAINST ANY OTHER PARTY TO THE EXTENT THAT SAMSUNG WOULD BE REQUIRED TO INDEMNIFY THAT PARTY FOR SUCH CLAIM.

6.5 You acknowledge that the above provisions of this clause 6 are reasonable for the Software and you will accept such risk and/or insure accordingly.

6.6 Any rights that you have as a consumer are not affected by this clause 6.

7. TERM AND TERMINATION

7.1 This License shall commence upon the earlier of your acceptance of this License or your activation of the Software and shall continue until terminated in accordance with clause 7.2 or otherwise in accordance with this License.

7.2 This License will terminate automatically if you fail to comply with any term or condition of this License or if you cease to use the Software for any reason.

7.3 Upon termination of this License for any reason whatsoever Licensor retains the right to permanently disable your access to the Software.

7.4 The termination of this License howsoever arising is without prejudice to the rights, duties and liabilities of either party accrued prior to termination. Clauses 2.2, 2.3, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7.3, 8, 9 and 10 of this License will continue to be enforceable notwithstanding termination.

8. GOVERNING LAW AND JURISDICTION

8.1 The formation, existence, construction, performance, validity and all aspects whatsoever of this License or of any term of this License will be governed by the laws of the State of New York.

8.2 The courts in New York City will have non-exclusive jurisdiction to settle any disputes which may arise out of or in connection with this License. The parties irrevocably agree to submit to that jurisdiction.

9. COMPLIANCE WITH APPLICABLE LAW

You acknowledge and agree that notwithstanding the fact that this License is governed by the laws of the Republic of Korea, you may be subject to additional laws in other jurisdictions with respect to your use of the Software. You
will comply with the laws of any jurisdiction that apply to the Software, including without limitation any applicable export laws or regulations.

10. GENERAL

10.1 If any clause or part of this License is found by any court, tribunal, administrative body or authority of competent jurisdiction to be illegal, invalid or unenforceable then that provision will, to the extent required, be severed from this License and will be ineffective without, as far as is possible, modifying any other clause or part of this License and this will not affect any other provisions of this License which will remain in full force and effect.

10.2 No failure or delay by any party to exercise any right, power or remedy will operate as a waiver of it nor will any partial exercise preclude any further exercise of the same, or of some other right, power or remedy.

10.3 The parties to this License do not intend that any of its terms will be enforceable by any person not a party to it.

10.4 This License contains all the terms which the parties have agreed in relation to the subject matter of this License and supersedes any prior written or oral agreements, representations or understandings between the parties in relation to such subject matter.

10.5 Licensor reserves the right to revise the terms of this License by updating the License on its web site, or by notifying you by post or by e-mail. You are advised to check the Licensor’s website periodically for notices concerning revisions. Your continued use of the Software shall be deemed to constitute acceptance of any revised terms.

10.6 You will be deemed to have accepted the terms of this License by using the Software on any device.
Index

Numerics

2G Network  
Using 209

3G Network 209  
Using 209

4G Network 151, 207, 209  
Using 209

A

Accounts  
setting up 60

Alarm  
Settings 158  
Turning Off 158  
Volume 158

Alarm Tone  
Setting 131

AllShare  
configuring 158

Android Keyboard  
Settings 229

Android keyboard  
configuring 52

App Shortcuts 38

Application Bar 23, 28

Applications 41  
Access T-Mobile 42  
Alarm 42  
AllShare 42  
Amazon 42  
Asphalt6 42  
Blio eBooks T-Mobile 43  
Calculator 43  
Calendar 43  
Camera 43  
Contacts 43  
downloading new 187  
Downloads 43  
Dropbox 44  
Email 44  
Files 44  
Gallery 44  
Get Web Now 44  
Gmail 44  
Google+ 44  

Internet 44  
Latitude 45  
Local 45  
Lookout Security 45  
Managing Downloaded Apps 218  
Maps 45  
Media Hub 45  
Memo 45  
Messaging 45  
Messenger 46  
MobileLife Organizer 46  
Music Player 46  
Navigation 46  
Pen Memo 46  
Photo Editor 46  
Play Books 46  
Play Movies 47  
Play Music 47  
Play Store 47  
Pro Apps 47  
Pulse 47  
Search 47
Settings 47
Shutting Down 16
SimCity Deluxe HD 48
Slacker Radio 48
Social Hub 48
Storage Used 219
Talk 48
Task Manager 48
TegraZone Games 48
T-Mobile TV 48
Uninstalling Third-party Applications 218
Applications settings
allow mock locations 238
development 238
running services 219
stay awake 238
USB debugging 238
Automatic Restore 234

Back button 26

Back up
My Account 234
My Data 234

Backup and Restore 234
Battery
charging 9
indicator 9
installing and removing 9

Battery Use & Safety 250
Blio eBooks T-Mobile 159

Bluetooth
Change Name 149
Change Visibility Timeout 149
List Received Files 149
pairing with a device 149
Settings 148
settings 203
turning on or off 148

Browser
Quick Controls 143

Browser Settings 141
Bubble
Options 74

Calendar 160
Camcorder
recording video 103
Settings 103
Camera
settings 99
taking photos 96
Care and Maintenance 254
Children and Cell Phones 246
Clear Cookies 141
Compatibility Zoom 27
Contacts
creating 61
display options 63
exporting and importing 66
groups 67
joining 65
linking 65
namecards 66
separating joined 65
setting a photo as contact icon 113
starred contacts 69
updating 62
CPU Usage
Display 239
Creating and sending
Messages 70
Device
Reset 235
Device Options 21
Display / Touch-Screen 252
Display settings
font style 215
DivX
Locating VOD Number 108
Overview 108
Registering Your DivX Device 108
DivX®
registration code 240
Do cell phones pose a health hazard? 242
Downloads
managing 188
Dropbox
Uploading Picture 166
Email
Combined view 85
composing and sending 86
configuring accounts 83
Emoticons 71
Exposure to Radio Frequency (RF) Signals 242
Factory Data Reset 235
Prior To 235
FCC Notice and Cautions 259
Firmware Update 153
Gallery 110
sharing photos and video 114
viewing photos and video 111
Games
Volume 211
Get 44
Gmail
account settings 80
composing and sending 80
refreshing your account 78
setting up your account 78
Data
Restrict Background Data 204
Data Limit
Setting 204
Data Roaming 208
Activate/Deactivate 204, 208
Data Usage
Cycle 204
Limiting 204
Deleting
Multiple Messages 75
Single Bubble 75
Single Message 75
Desktop Backup Password 239
Display / Touch-Screen 252
Display settings
font style 215
DivX
Locating VOD Number 108
Overview 108
Registering Your DivX Device 108
DivX®
registration code 240
Do cell phones pose a health hazard? 242
Downloads
managing 188
Dropbox
Uploading Picture 166
Email
Combined view 85
composing and sending 86
configuring accounts 83
Emoticons 71
Exposure to Radio Frequency (RF) Signals 242
Factory Data Reset 235
Prior To 235
FCC Notice and Cautions 259
Firmware Update 153
Gallery 110
sharing photos and video 114
viewing photos and video 111
Games
Volume 211
Get 44
Gmail
account settings 80
composing and sending 80
refreshing your account 78
setting up your account 78
Data
Restrict Background Data 204
Data Limit
Setting 204
Data Roaming 208
Activate/Deactivate 204, 208
Data Usage
Cycle 204
Limiting 204
Deleting
Multiple Messages 75
Single Bubble 75
Single Message 75
Desktop Backup Password 239
Google
Gmail 78
Latitude 169
Maps 173
Navigation 180
Play Store 187
your account 12
YouTube 199

Google Messenger 95
Google Music 119
Google Places
See also Local 171
Google Play 187
Google Search 192
Google Voice Typing 59
Configuring 230
Google+ 135
GPS 253
GPS Applications 155
GPU
Force Rendering 239
Group Cast 166
Groups
creating 67

GSM 209

H
Health and Safety Information 242
Home button 26
Home Page
Assigning New 26
Home screen 22
adding widgets 34
customizing 24
primary shortcuts 34
wallpaper 39

Home Screen Wallpaper
Setting 213

HSPA+
151, 207

Images
Assigning as a Contact icon 101
Assigning as wallpaper 101

Internet 135
Internet Email 82
IP Address 240

K
Kies 153
via Wi-Fi 205

Language and keyboard Settings
Select Locale 229
Local 171
Location and Google Search 222
Location Services Settings 221
Lock Screen Wallpaper
Setting 213
Locking and Unlocking
unlocking the keypad 17

Map Settings 175
Maps 173
Menu
custom-context-sensitive 27
Message
Options 71
Read 73
Reply 74
Thread Options 74
Threads 74
Message Search 75
Message threads 74
Messages
  Gmail 78
types 70
Messaging
  Adding Attachments 72
  Additional Text 73
  Creating and sending 70
  Deleting a message 75
  Insert Smiley 71
  Menu Options 71
  Options 71
  Settings 76
  Text Templates 77
  Viewing new 73
Messenger 95
Microsoft Exchange 82
Mini App Tray 23, 40
Mobile Data
  Set Data Limit 204
Mobile Networks 208
  Data Roaming 208
Mobile Networks
  Use Packet Data 208
MobileLife Family Organizer 179
  Create an Appointment 180
  Logging In 179
Music
  add songs to a playlist 126
  creating a playlist 125, 129
  Music Player 128
  Volume 211
Music app 119
Music File Extensions
  3GP 128
  AAC 128
  AAC+ 128
eAAC+ 128
  M4A 128
  MP3 128
  MP4 128
  WMA 128
Music Player
  Making a Song a Alarm Tone 129
  Managing Your Music 128
  Playing Music 128
Namecards
  sending 66
Navigation 26
  command keys 34
  Primary Shortcuts 34
  screen 28
Navigation button 26
Network Mode
  2G Network 209
  3G Network 209
Notification
  Default 211
Notification Panel 29
Notifications 29
  Volume 211
Offensive Words
  Block 233
Operating Environment 257
Other Important Safety Information 259
Outlook 82
Pairing with Bluetooth 149
Passwords
   Make Visible 226
Photo ID
   setting 113
Photos
   Gallery 110
   sharing 114
   taking 96
Picture
   Assign as Contact Icon 101
   Assign as Wallpaper 101
Play Movies 119
Play Music
   Tab Options 121
Play Store 187
Playlists
   adding songs 126
   creating 125, 129
Pointer Speed
   Configuration 234
Power Saving Mode 215
   Custom 215
Powering On and Off 11
Predictive Text 230
Privacy settings
   factory data reset 235
   Q
Quick Controls 143
Reducing Exposure
   Hands-Free Kits and Other
   Accessories 245
Reset 235
   factory data 235
Reset Device 235
Responsible Listening 255
Restore 234
Restrict
   Background Data 204
Restricting Children's Access to Your
   Mobile device 259
Screen
   Adding Shortcuts 38
Screen Lock
   Set Up 223
   Sounds 212
Screen Lock Pattern
   Changing 224
   Creating 223
   Deleting 224
Screen Mode 213
SafeSearch 233
Samsung Account
   Accounts and sync 14
   Creating 14
Samsung Keyboard
   Entering Text 51
Samsung Kies 153
Samsung Mobile Products and
   Recycling 252
SAR Values 248
Samsung Account
   Accounts and sync 14
   Creating 14
Samsung Kies 153
Samsung Mobile Products and
   Recycling 252
SAR Values 248
Screen
   Adding Shortcuts 38
Screen Lock
   Set Up 223
   Sounds 212
Screen Lock Pattern
   Changing 224
   Creating 223
   Deleting 224
Screen Mode 213
Screen settings
  auto adjust screen power 215
  auto-rotate screen 214
  brightness 213
  timeout 215
Screen Unlock
  Swipe 223
Search
  Google 192
Securing your device
  locking and unlocking 17
Security
  locking and unlocking 17
  locking your device 17
Security settings
  device administration 227
  trusted credentials 227
Settings 201
  Enabling the GPS Satellites 221
  Location Services 221
Shortcuts 38
SIM Card 7
  Changing Existing PIN 226
  Installing 7
  Lock 226
  Removing 8
  Setting Up Lock 226
Slacker Radio 193
Smart Practices While Driving 249
Snooze 158
Social Hub 271
Software Update 241
  Wi-Fi 241
Sound and Vibration 212
Sound settings
  ringer volume 211
Specific Absorption Rate (SAR)
Certification Information 247
Standard Limited Warranty 261
Status Bar 32
Strict Mode 239
Swype
  configuring 57
  entering text 56
  help 57
Synchronization settings
  auto-sync 221
System Tone
  Settings 212
Systeme
  Volume 211
TegraZone
  Games 195
Tethering 151
  Activating 151
  Active Icon 151
  Disconnecting 151
Text
  changing input method 50
  entering 50
  input methods 50
  using Swype 56
  Virtual QWERTY Keyboard 51
Text Templates
  Create Your Own 77
Text To Speech 233
Text-to-speech
  Configuration 233
Third-Party Applications 218
Touches
  Show 239
TrackPad
  Configure 234
TTS 233
Turning Your Device On and Off 11
UL Certified Travel Charger 252
Unknown Sources
  Installing Unsigned Apps 227
Unsigned Apps
  Unknown Sources 227
Update Available 156
USB connections
  as a mass storage device 154
USB Settings
  Windows Media Player 154
USB settings
  as a mass storage device 154
  mass storage device 154
Use GPS Satellites 221
Use Packet Data 208
Use Wireless Networks 221
Video
  Changing Screen Display Mode 107
  Volume 211
Videos
  Gallery 110
  recording 103
  sharing 114
Voice Input
  Recognition 233
Voice Search 233
Voice Typing
  Configuring 230
Volume
  key 21
Warranty Information 261
WCDMA 209
Widgets 34
Wi-Fi
  adding a connection manually 145
  Direct 66
  Direct settings 207
  enabling 169
  scanning and connecting 145
  settings 201
  Show Usage 204
  Sleep Policy 146
  Status icons 145
  turning on or off 144, 201
Wi-Fi (see Wi-Fi) 144
Wi-Fi Direct 33, 146
Wi-Fi Hotspot 151
  Activating 152
  Connecting 152
  Securing 153
Windows Media Player
  Synchronizing with 154
Wireless Networking
   Bluetooth 148
   Wi-Fi 144
World Clock 196
WPA2 PSK 153

XT9 Predictive Text 230

YouTube 199